

Wisdom of Buddha

The Saṃdhinirmocana Sūtra

Translated by
John Powers

Dharma



Publishing



1. *Calm and Clear*
2. *The Legend of the Great Stupa*
3. *Mind in Buddhist Psychology*
4. *Golden Zephyr* (Nāgārjuna)
5. *Kindly Bent to Ease Us, Parts 1-3*
6. *Elegant Sayings* (Nāgārjuna, Sakya Pandita)
7. *The Life and Liberation of Padmasambhava*
8. *Buddha's Lions: Lives of the 84 Siddhas*
9. *The Voice of the Buddha* (Lalitavistara Sūtra)
10. *The Marvelous Companion* (Jātakamālā)
11. *Mother of Knowledge: Enlightenment of Yeshe Tshogyal*
12. *The Dhammapada* (Teachings on 26 Topics)
13. *The Fortunate Aeon* (Bhadrakalpika Sūtra)
14. *Master of Wisdom* (Nāgārjuna)
15. *Joy for the World* (Candrakīrti)
16. *Wisdom of Buddha* (Saṃdhinirmocana Sūtra)

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Tripiṭaka. Saṃdhinirmocanasūtra. English

Wisdom of Buddha : the Saṃdhinirmocana Sūtra / translated by
John Powers.

p. cm. – (Tibetan translation series.)

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 0-89800-247-8. – ISBN 0-89800-246-X (pbk.)

I. Title. II. Series

BQ2092.E5 1994

294.3'85-dc20

94-25023 CIP

Copyright ©1995 by Dharma Publishing. All rights reserved.

No part of this book, including text, art, reproductions, and illustrations, may be copied, reproduced, published, or stored electronically, photographically, or optically in any form without the express written consent of Dharma Publishing, 2425 Hillside Avenue, Berkeley, CA 94704 USA

Frontispiece: Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art

Gift of Joseph H. Heil, 1970 (1970.298.1)

This publication was sponsored by a generous donation from Michael Gray.

Printed in the United States of America by Dharma Press

Typeset in ITC Zapf Book Light with WP Murray Hill initials



Contents

Preface	xiii
Introduction	xv
The Setting and Chapter One: The Chapter of Gambhīrārthasāṃdhinirmocana	3
Chapter Two: The Questions of Dharmodgata	23
Chapter Three: The Questions of Suviśuddhamati	33
Chapter Four: The Questions of Subhūti	51
Chapter Five: The Questions of Viśālamati	67
Chapter Six: The Questions of Guṇākara	79
Chapter Seven: The Questions of Paramārthasamudgata	93
Chapter Eight: The Questions of Maitreya	147
Chapter Nine: The Questions of Avalokiteśvara	219
Chapter Ten: The Questions of Mañjuśrī	273
Notes	313
Abbreviations	371
Bibliography	373
Glossary	384
Index	386



Preface

Buddhism teaches that life is precious. If we wish to use our limited time on earth to create a truly meaningful existence, there is no better foundation than the Dharma, the teachings of the Buddha.

The Buddha taught for almost fifty years, and although many of his teachings have been lost over the millennia, thousands of texts have been preserved in Sanskrit, Pāli, Tibetan, and Chinese, bringing the wisdom of the Dharma to many lands. Only a few hundred of these texts have been translated into Western languages. Each new translation reveals further aspects of the Buddha's realization, confirming the value of the Dharma and the depth and richness of the teachings.

With this publication, the Saṃdhinirmocana Sūtra becomes available in its entirety in English for the first time. Considered a Sūtra of definitive meaning, the Saṃdhinirmocana is among the extraordinary teachings that the Buddha gave to the advanced Bodhisattvas. Its brilliance illuminates ideas and practices of great depth and subtlety.

Vast in scope, the Saṃdhinirmocana is rich in profound meaning that cannot be fully fathomed in one reading. However, patient study, reflection, and rereading will evoke clear insight into the Buddha's awakened vision.

Conveying the deep and subtle meanings of a text such as the *Samdhinirmocana* into clear, readable English is a demanding task. Buddhist terminology and perspectives are still unfamiliar to the West, and the vocabulary available cannot always convey the ideas being expressed. In the eighth and ninth centuries, when the Dharma was being transmitted to Tibet, Indian paṇḍitas and Tibetan lotsāwas worked together to establish uniform standards of translation. As similar efforts are carried out in the West, the challenge of communicating the heart of the Dharma teachings will become easier and the results more accurate. I hope that the present translation will inspire efforts in this direction.

For over twenty years Dharma Publishing has been dedicated to producing Buddhist books and art of the highest quality. Although a work such as this has a very limited audience and is quite difficult to produce, I am confident that the immeasurable virtue of the wisdom that the text contains makes it infinitely worth the effort.

I would like to thank the translator, John Powers, for his careful work. My thanks go as well to the Dharma Publishing editors and production staff, especially Sylvia Gretchen, who worked closely with Dr. Powers to prepare the translation for publication. There is no doubt that the meritorious action of making this wonderful Sūtra available to the English-reading world will benefit many living beings.

Sarvaṃ Maṅgalam
Tarthang Tulku
September 1994



Introduction

One of the most influential texts in Indian Mahāyāna Buddhist literature, the Saṃdhinirmocana Sūtra presents a wealth of teachings central to all Buddhist practice and philosophy. Its explications of the meaning of the ultimate, the basis-consciousness (ālaya-vijñāna), and the doctrine of cognition-only (vijñapti-mātra) have had a major impact in every country where Mahāyāna Buddhism has flourished, including India, Tibet, Mongolia, China, Korea, and Japan.

The teachings of the Buddha demonstrate how our common modes of viewing reality and our habitual ways of living and relating to the world are fundamentally mistaken. While Christian philosophy traditionally identifies the root of our existential problems as original sin, the Buddha taught that ignorance is more fundamental than sin, for through ignorance we unwittingly commit actions that result in harm to ourselves and others. This ignorance clouds the continuum of each and every being who is not a Buddha, and can be overcome only through individual effort.

The Saṃdhinirmocana Sūtra tells us how the full force of our mental and physical faculties can be harnessed for this task. Comprehensive and multifaceted, the text details the world view, stages, and yogic practices necessary for transforming even the most subtle manifestations of ignorance.

The reader is guided on a path that leads to mental balance, insight into the nature of reality, and deep commitment to work selflessly for the benefit of other beings.

Summary of the Text

Like many Sūtras, the text recounts a series of questions and answers between the Buddha and his followers, or, in the case of chapter one, between two Bodhisattvas. Except for chapter four, where the Śrāvaka Subhūti questions the Buddha, all of the interlocutors are highly developed Bodhisattvas. Their questions and the Buddha's answers go to the very heart of the practice or issue being discussed, fully explicating profound and subtle meanings.

The setting in which the Buddha teaches the Sūtra is described as a vast celestial palace that fills countless worldly realms with its brilliance and surpasses all other dwellings. This wondrous palace reflects the supreme spiritual attainments of the Buddha, who created it, and the aspirations of all its inhabitants, who are Dharma practitioners of a high level of development.

The Sūtra may be divided into five main parts. The first four chapters present the ultimate and how it is to be understood by trainees. Chapter five is an analysis of consciousness; chapters six and seven discuss the relative character of phenomena and of teachings as they are illuminated by definitive understanding. The path to enlightenment is the subject of the eighth and ninth chapters, which focus on meditative practices and the methods for mastering the mental afflictions and obstacles that undermine progress on the path. Chapter ten is a discussion of the nature of a Buddha, the final goal of yogic practice.

The Bodhisattva Gambhīrārthasamādhinirmocana characterizes the ultimate as “ineffable and of a non-dual character” in chapter one. The ultimate pervades all reality but cannot be described in words or understood by conceptual thought. It is realized only by Āryas, those who have attained the path of seeing and are able to perceive the ultimate directly.

In chapter two the Bodhisattva Dharmodgata describes a debate on the ultimate character of phenomena that he witnessed among proponents of various Tīrthika systems. The Bodhisattva laments their divergent opinions, doubts, and misconceptions and marvels at the Buddha’s realization and actualization of the ultimate, “whose character completely transcends all argumentation.” In response, the Buddha teaches that the ultimate is realized individually, is signless, inexpressible, devoid of the conventional, and free from all dispute. Beings caught up in desire, discursiveness, and the conventions of seeing, hearing, differentiating, and perceiving, as well as beings engaged in dispute, cannot even imagine what the ultimate is like.

In chapter three, the Bodhisattva Suvisuddhamati points out that even Bodhisattvas disagree about the ultimate: Some believe the character of the ultimate and the character of the compounded are the same; others believe them to be different. Through a series of reasonings, the Buddha demonstrates that any attempt to categorize leads to error, for the ultimate is “profound and subtle, having a character completely transcending sameness and difference.”

The ultimate must be sought through meditation that moves beyond all limiting and distorting categories. In chapter four the Buddha poses two questions to Subhūti: How many people communicate their spiritual understanding under the influence of conceit? How many communicate without conceit? Subhūti recounts a time when he witnessed a large gathering of monks, all advanced in training, who

expressed their understanding based on “various forms of phenomena” such as the five aggregates, the six sense spheres, and the four noble truths. Since they did “not seek the ultimate whose character is all of one taste . . . therefore, these venerable persons have conceit.” The Buddha explains that the ultimate, which pervades all phenomena and is undifferentiated in all compounded things, is “an object of observation for purification of the aggregates.”

Using this discussion of the ultimate as a basis, chapter five provides an analysis of the nature of consciousness that indicates how we are able to progress from our present state of ignorance, desire, and hatred to the state of a Buddha. In response to questions by the Bodhisattva Viśālamati, the Buddha teaches that our present mental states and life situations result solely from our own past actions. Each action and thought creates a concordant predisposition that is deposited in our mental continuum. The Buddha points to a “basis-consciousness” which collects these predispositions and holds them until the time is ripe for them to give rise to their resultant effects. “Bodhisattvas are wise with respect to the secrets of mind, thought, and consciousness,” not only because they understand the very subtle ways that consciousness functions, but also because they have transcended even the most subtle clinging to any object of perception.

In chapter six the Buddha teaches the Bodhisattva Guṇākara that phenomena exhibit a threefold character: the imputational (*parikalpita*), the other-dependent (*paratantra*), and the thoroughly established (*pariniṣpanna*). These characters are illustrated by compelling examples that remind us that the Buddha is not introducing abstract philosophical concepts, but is instructing us in how to reorient the mind toward enlightenment.

In chapter seven, the Bodhisattva Paramārthasamudgata asks the Buddha his intention in teaching that “All phenom-

ena lack own-being; all phenomena are unproduced, unceasing, quiescent from the start, and naturally in a state of nirvāṇa." The Buddha's response further reveals the nature of phenomena and differentiates teachings of definitive meaning from those of interpretable meaning. Just as space pervades all form, teachings of definitive meaning pervade all Sūtras of interpretable meaning. Those who understand the intention behind the Buddha's teaching know that although beings are diverse, there is a "single purity" and "one vehicle."

In the eighth chapter the Bodhisattva Maitreya's questions focus on how to develop śamatha and vipaśyanā, two main bases of Buddhist meditation. Śamatha is the ability, developed through concentrated meditative practice, to focus one's mind on an object without distraction. This is essential for more advanced meditative practice, since it prevents the afflictions from arising. Vipāśyanā involves analyzing the object to determine its true nature. This practice recalls the teachings of the first four chapters, since the true nature of phenomena is the ultimate, which is equated with suchness and emptiness. Through developing vipaśyanā, one eradicates the basis of the afflictions and is able to perceive the ultimate directly. Here the Buddha teaches that the images of people and things that we observe are "cognition-only."

The ninth chapter maps the path to enlightenment, delineating the ten Bodhisattva stages, the levels through which Mahāyāna practitioners progress. Each stage represents a decisive advance in understanding and spiritual attainment. The questioner here is Avalokiteśvara, the embodiment of compassion. The main meditative practice is the six perfections—generosity, ethics, patience, effort, concentration, and wisdom—the essence of the Bodhisattva's training.

Compassion motivates Bodhisattvas to work tirelessly on the spiritual path for an unimaginably long period of time. The final fruition of their efforts is the state of a Buddha, the

focus of chapter ten. It represents the apex of all spiritual qualities and the highest development of compassion and wisdom. Through the Buddha's answers to the Bodhisattva Mañjuśrī's questions, we learn that a Buddha's limitless compassionate action is accomplished without any manifest activity. There is no afflicted being who later becomes purified: "Afflicted phenomena and pure phenomena are all without activity and personhood." Hearing this, the aspiring Bodhisattva is again reminded that pursuing the ultimate goal of the path of yogic practice begins and ends with a proper understanding of the nature of the ultimate.

About This Translation

As this brief summary suggests, the Saṃdhinirmocana Sūtra is a complex and advanced text. Translating it has proven to be a demanding task which has taken many years. I first began work on the translation as a graduate student at the University of Virginia, where it became my doctoral thesis. Later much effort was devoted to refining the translation and preparing it for publication. Throughout, my goal has been to keep the English translation faithful to the structure of the Tibetan text and to translate technical terms conservatively and consistently. While this has sometimes resulted in awkward readings, I prefer this approach to being overly speculative about the meaning of the Sūtra's many difficult passages.

Although the original Sanskrit text was probably lost by the thirteenth century, numerous translations of this Sūtra exist today in Asian languages. I chose to base this translation on the Tibetan since I had access to a number of different Tibetan editions, and also because the Tibetans are especially noted for their accurate translations of canonical texts. In my studies, I have consulted ten different Tibetan editions, as well as three Chinese editions, and have noted their variant readings.

The Tibetan text presented here is reproduced from the canonical edition found in the sDe-dge bKa'-gyur, which is highly esteemed by Tibetan scholars, and the English translation is based on this text. It is my hope that having the Tibetan text facing the English translation will encourage students and scholars to draw inspiration and clarity from both.

In preparing the translation and notes, I have also relied on the five commentaries found in the Tibetan Buddhist Canon, as well as on Tibetan exegetical materials (both written texts and oral instructions), and on Yogācāra texts that explain concepts presented in the Sūtra.

Most of the footnotes are drawn from the two most comprehensive commentaries in Tibetan. The larger of these is a three-volume work authored by Wonch'uk, a Korean student of the great Chinese scholar Hsüan-tsang. Since major sections of Wonch'uk's original Chinese text have been lost, the only complete version of the text available today is the Tibetan translation found in the Tibetan Buddhist Canon. The text is a masterpiece of traditional Buddhist scholarship that draws upon a vast range of Buddhist literature, cites many different opinions, raises important points about the thought of the Sūtra, and provides explanations of virtually every technical term and phrase.

The other major commentary, consisting of two volumes, is signed by "Byang-chub-rdzu'phrul." Although there is some mystery surrounding the author's identity, most Tibetan scholars attribute this text to Cog-ro Klu'i-rgyal-mtshan, a renowned eighth-century Tibetan translator and scholar. The text provides insightful explications of most of the Sūtra.

Other sources consulted for the notes include the works of Asaṅga and his brother Vasubandhu (generally considered to be the main exponents and systematizers of the Yogācāra school); commentaries on their works by Sthiramati and Sumatīśīla; the commentary on the eighth chapter attributed

to Jñānagarbha; the Legs-bshad-snying-po (which mainly focuses on the seventh chapter of the Sūtra) by Tsong-kha-pa, founder of the dGe-lugs-pa school of Tibetan Buddhism; its commentary by dPal-'byor-lhun-grub; and oral explanations from contemporary Tibetan scholars.

I am truly fortunate to have had access to such a wide range of secondary materials and explanations, for the meanings expressed in the Sūtra can be obscure. Each source has helped me greatly in understanding and translating the Sūtra. While the constraints of space have made it necessary to condense the notes prepared for my doctoral thesis, I hope that the notes included here will inspire readers to consider the many differing perspectives available and foster a deeper understanding of the Sūtra's meaning.

I have also had the great good fortune to have worked with Tibetan and Western scholars who generously shared their knowledge and understanding of this Sūtra with me. I would especially like to thank Geshe Jamphel Phandro, Geshe Palden Dragpa, Geshe Yeshe Thabkhe, Dr. Jeffrey Hopkins, Dr. Christian Lindtner, Dr. Ernst Steinkellner, and Dr. Helmut Eimer. I am also grateful to H. H. the Dalai Lama for his illuminating remarks on this Sūtra during a meeting in Dharamsala in 1988.

Taught by the Buddha as a skillful means, the Saṃdhi-nirmocana Sūtra is intended as a basis for meditative practice, a guide to a Bodhisattva's training for enlightenment. Bearing this in mind may encourage the reader to undertake the careful and sustained study, contemplation, and application in daily life that will ultimately help to reveal the full depth and scope of this profound work.



Homage to the Tathāgata Buddha Śākyamuni



དོན་ཟབ་དགོངས་པ་དེས་པར་འགྲེལ་གྱི་ལུ་སྟེ་དང་པོ།

The Chapter of
Gambhīrārthasāṃdhanirmocana

*The Setting and
Chapter One*

Homage to all Buddhas and Bodhisattvas!

Thus have I heard at one time: The Bhagavan was dwelling in an immeasurable palace arrayed with the supreme brilliance of the seven precious substances,¹ emanating great rays of light that suffused innumerable universes.

Well-apportioned into distinctive sections, it was limitless in reach;² an unimpeded mandala; a sphere of activity completely transcending the three worldly realms; arisen from the root of supreme virtue that transcends the world.³ It was characterized by perfect knowledge, the knowledge of one who has mastery.⁴

Abode of the Tathāgata, attended by a community of innumerable Bodhisattvas,⁵ it was alive with unlimited numbers of devas, nāgas, yakṣas, gandharvas, asuras, garuḍas, kiṃnaras, mahoragas, humans, and non-humans.⁶ Steadfast due to great bliss and joy in the taste of the Dharma; enduring in order to bring about the welfare of all sentient beings; free from the harm of the defilements of the afflictions; completely free from all demons;⁷ surpassing all patterns; arranged through the blessing of the Tathāgata; emancipated through great mindfulness, intelligence, and realization; support of the great state of peace and penetrating awareness; entered through the great doors of liberation—emptiness, signlessness, and wishlessness—this pattern was adorned with

boundless masses of excellent qualities, and with great kingly jeweled lotuses.⁸

The Bhagavan was endowed with a mind of good understanding and did not possess the two [negative] behaviors.⁹ Perfectly absorbed in the teaching of signlessness, abiding in the way that a Buddha abides,¹⁰ having attained sameness with all Buddhas, having full realization without obscurations, he was endowed with irreversible qualities.¹¹ Not captivated by objects of activity, positing [doctrines] inconceivably,¹² thoroughly penetrating the sameness of the three times, the [Bhagavan] was endowed with the five [types of] embodiments that abide in every worldly realm.

Having attained the knowledge that has no doubts regarding all phenomena, having attained intelligence possessing all capabilities, he was unperplexed with respect to knowledge of the Dharma. Endowed with an unimaginable embodiment,¹³ having fully given rise to the wisdom of all the Bodhisattvas, endowed with the non-dual abiding of a Buddha¹⁴ and the supreme perfections, he had reached the limit of the uniquely liberating and exalted wisdom of a Tathāgata. He had realized full equality with the state of a Buddha without ends or middle, wholly permeated by the Dharmadhātu, extending to the limit of the realm of space.¹⁵

He was also accompanied by a measureless assembly of Śrāvakas, all very knowledgeable sons of the Buddha, with liberated minds,¹⁶ very liberated wisdom, and completely

pure ethics. They happily associated with those who yearn for the teaching. They were very learned, bearing in mind what they had learned, accumulating learning, intent on good contemplations, speaking good words, and doing good deeds. They had agile wisdom, quick wisdom, sharp wisdom, the wisdom of renunciation, the wisdom of certain realization, great wisdom, extensive wisdom, profound wisdom, wisdom without equal. Endowed with the precious jewel of wisdom, they possessed the three knowledges¹⁷ and had obtained supremely blissful abiding in this life and great purity. They had fully developed a completely peaceful way of acting, were endowed with great patience and determination, and were wholly engaged in the Tathāgata's teaching.

Also in attendance were innumerable Bodhisattvas who assembled from various Buddha lands, all of them fully engaged and abiding in the great state [of the Mahāyāna].¹⁸ They had renounced cyclic existence through the teaching of the Great Vehicle, were even-minded toward all beings, and were free from all imputations, ideations, and mental constructions. They had conquered all demons and opponents and were removed from all the mental tendencies of the Śrāvakas and Pratyekabuddhas. They were steadfast through great bliss and joy in the taste of the Dharma. They had completely transcended the five great fears¹⁹ and had progressed solely to the irreversible stages.²⁰ They had actualized those stages which bring to rest all harms to all sentient beings.

Among them were the Bodhisattvas, the Mahāsattvas, Gambhīrārthasaṃdhinirmocana and Vidhivatparipṛcchaka, Dharmodgata, Suviśuddhamati, Viśālamati and Guṇākara, Paramārthasamudgata and Āryāvalokiteśvara, Maitreya and Mañjuśrī, all abiding together.

At that time, Bodhisattva Vidhivatparipṛcchaka questioned the Bodhisattva Gambhīrārthasaṃdhinirmocana²¹ about the ultimate whose character is inexpressible and non-dual. "O Son of the Conqueror, when it is said, 'All phenomena are non-dual, all phenomena are non-dual,' how is it that all phenomena are non-dual?"

"Son of good lineage, with respect to all phenomena, 'all phenomena' are of just two kinds: compounded and un-compounded.²² The compounded is not compounded, nor is it uncompounded. The uncompounded is not uncompounded, nor is it compounded."

"O son of the Conqueror, why is the compounded neither compounded nor uncompounded? Why is the uncompounded neither uncompounded nor compounded?"

"Son of good lineage, 'compounded' is a term designated by the Teacher. This term designated by the Teacher is a conventional expression arisen from mental construction.

Because a conventional expression arisen from mental construction is a conventional expression of various mental constructions, it is not established. Therefore, it is [said to be] not compounded.

“Son of good lineage, ‘uncompounded’ is also included within the conventional. Even if something were expressed that is not included within the compounded or uncompounded it would be just the same as this. It would be just like this. An expression is also not without thingness. What is a thing? It is that to which the Āryas completely and perfectly awaken without explanation, through their exalted wisdom and exalted vision.”²³ Because they have completely and perfectly realized that very reality which is inexpressible, they designate the name ‘compounded’.

“Son of good lineage, ‘uncompounded’ is also a term designated by the Teacher. This term designated by the Teacher is a conventional expression arisen from mental construction. Because a conventional expression arisen from mental construction is a conventional expression of various mental constructions, it is not established. Therefore, it is [said to be] not uncompounded.

“Son of good lineage, ‘compounded’ is also included within the conventional. Even if something were expressed that is not included within the compounded or uncompounded it would be just the same as this. It would be just like this. An

expression is also not without thingness. What is a thing? It is that to which the Āryas completely and perfectly awaken without explanation, through their exalted wisdom and exalted vision. Because they have completely and perfectly realized that very reality which is inexpressible, they designate the name 'uncompounded'."

"O son of the Conqueror, how is it that the Āryas, through their exalted wisdom and exalted vision completely and perfectly realize things without explanation, and completely and perfectly realize that very reality which is inexpressible and therefore designate the names 'compounded' and 'uncompounded'?"

"Son of good lineage, for example, a magician or a magician's able student, standing at the crossing of four great roads, after gathering grasses, leaves, twigs, pebbles or stones, displays various magical forms, such as a herd of elephants, a cavalry, chariots, and infantry; collections of gems, pearls, lapis lazuli, conch-shells, crystal, and coral; collections of wealth, grain, treasures, and granaries.²⁴

"When those sentient beings who have childish natures, foolish natures, or confused natures—who do not realize that these are grasses, leaves, twigs, pebbles, and stones—see or hear these things, they think: "This herd of elephants that appears, exists; these cavalry, chariots, infantry, gems, pearls,

lapis lazuli, conch-shells, crystal, coral, wealth, grain, treasures, and granaries that appear, exist.'

"Having thought this, they emphatically apprehend and emphatically assert in accordance with how they see and hear. Subsequently they make the conventional designations: 'This is true, the other is false.' Later they must closely examine these things.

"When those sentient beings who do not have childish or foolish natures, who have natures endowed with wisdom—who recognize that these are grasses, twigs, pebbles, and stones—hear and see these things, they think: 'This herd of elephants that appears does not exist. These cavalry, chariots, infantry, gems, pearls, lapis lazuli, conch-shells, crystal, coral, wealth, grain, treasures, and granaries that appear do not exist. But, in regard to them there arises the perception of a herd of elephants and the perception of the attributes of a herd of elephants, the perception of wealth, grain, treasures, and granaries and the perception of their attributes. These magical illusions exist.'

"Having thought, 'These visual deceptions exist,' they emphatically apprehend and emphatically assert in accordance with how they see and hear. Subsequently they do not make the conventional designations: 'This is true, the other is false.' They make conventional designations because they fully know the object in this way. Later, they will not need to closely examine these things.

"Similarly, when sentient beings who are ordinary beings with childish natures—who have not attained the supramundane wisdom of Āryas, who do not manifestly recognize the inexpressible reality of all phenomena—see and hear these compounded and uncompounded things, they think: 'These compounded and uncompounded things which appear, exist.' They emphatically apprehend and emphatically assert in accordance with how they see and hear. Subsequently they make the conventional designations: 'This is true, the other is false.' Later they must closely examine these things.

"When those sentient beings who do not have childish natures—who see the truth, who have attained the supramundane wisdom of the Āryas, who manifestly recognize the inexpressible reality of all phenomena—see and hear these compounded and uncompounded things, they think: 'These compounded and uncompounded things that appear do not exist.' With regard to them there arises a perception of what is compounded and uncompounded and a perception of the attributes of the compounded and the uncompounded.

"Thinking that, 'The compositional signs that arise from mental constructions exist like a magician's illusions; these obscurations of the mind exist,' they emphatically apprehend and emphatically assert in accordance with how they see and how they hear. But they do not subsequently make the conventional designations: 'This is true, the other is false.' They make conventional designations because they fully know the

object in this way. Later, they will not need to closely examine these things.

“Son of good lineage, in that way the Āryas, through exalted wisdom and exalted vision, completely and perfectly realize things without explanation. Because they completely and perfectly realize that very reality which is inexpressible, they nominally designate the names ‘compounded’ and ‘uncompounded’.”

Then Bodhisattva Gambhīrārthasaṃdhinirmocana spoke these verses:

“The Conquerors taught that the profound,
inexpressible and non-dual, is not the domain of children,
but childish ones, obscured by ignorance,
delight in elaborations of speech and abide in duality.²⁵

“Those who do not realize this or who understand it wrongly
will be reborn as sheep or oxen.

Having abandoned the speech of the wise,
they cycle in saṃsāra for a very long time.”

This completes the first chapter of the Bodhisattva Gambhīrārthasaṃdhinirmocana.





Homage to the Tathāgata Buddha Śākyamuni



ཚཱ་འཕགས་ཀྱི་ལུ་སྟེ་གཉིས་པ།

The Questions of
Dharmodgata

Chapter Two

Then Bodhisattva Dharmodgata¹ spoke to the Bhagavan: "Bhagavan, in a distant epoch of ancient times, passing beyond this world system as many world systems as there are grains of sand in seventy-seven Ganges rivers, I lived in the world system Kīrtimat, Buddha Land of the Tathāgata Viśālakīrti. While there, I saw 7,700,000 teachers and others of various Tīrthika systems.²

"They had gathered together at a certain place to begin considering the ultimate character of phenomena. Although they contemplated, weighed, closely examined, and sought the ultimate character of phenomena, they had not realized it. They had divergent opinions, doubts, and misconceptions. They debated and quarreled; they insulted each other with harsh words; they were abusive, deceitful, and overbearing; they attacked one another.

"Having seen them so divided, Bhagavan, I thought: 'Alas! Tathāgatas arise in the world and through their arising the realization and actualization of the ultimate, whose character completely transcends all argumentation, is indeed marvelous and astonishing!'"

The Bhagavan replied to the Bodhisattva Dharmodgata: "So it is! Dharmodgata, so it is! I have fully and perfectly realized the ultimate whose character completely transcends all argumentation.³ Having fully and perfectly realized this, I have

proclaimed it and made it clear, opened it up and systematized it, and taught it comprehensively.

“Why is this? I have explained that the ultimate is realized individually by the Āryas,⁴ while objects collectively known by ordinary beings [belong to] the realm of argumentation. Thus, Dharmodgata, by this form of explanation know that whatever has a character completely transcending all argumentation is the ultimate.

“Moreover, Dharmodgata, I have explained that the ultimate belongs to the signless realm, while argumentation belongs to the realm of signs. Thus, Dharmodgata, by this form of explanation also know that whatever has a character completely transcending all argumentation is the ultimate.

“Moreover, Dharmodgata, I have explained that the ultimate is inexpressible, while argumentation belongs to the realm of expression. Thus, Dharmodgata, by this form of explanation also know that whatever has a character completely transcending all argumentation is the ultimate.

“Moreover, Dharmodgata, I have explained that the ultimate is devoid of conventions, while argumentation belongs to the realm of conventions.⁵ Thus, Dharmodgata, by this form of explanation also know that whatever has a character completely transcending all argumentation is the ultimate.

"Moreover, Dharmodgata, I have explained that the ultimate is completely devoid of all dispute, while argumentation belongs to the realm of controversy. Thus, Dharmodgata, by this form of explanation also know that whatever has a character completely transcending argumentation is the ultimate.

"Dharmodgata, for example,⁶ beings acquainted only with hot and bitter tastes for their entire lives would be unable to imagine, infer, or appreciate the sweet taste of honey or the taste of sugar.

"Beings who have been engaged in passionate desire for a long time, who have been utterly tormented by the pangs of desire, are unable to imagine, infer, or appreciate the happiness of inner solitude free from all the signs of form, sound, smell, taste, or touch.

"Because beings have been engaged in discursiveness for a long time, manifestly delighting in discursiveness, they are unable to imagine, infer, or appreciate the inner non-discursive joy of the Āryas.

"Because beings have been engaged in the conventions of seeing, hearing, differentiating, and perceiving for a long time, manifestly delighting in these conventions, they are unable to imagine, infer, or appreciate nirvāṇa, which is the cessation of [belief in] true personhood,⁷ the complete elimination of all conventions.

"Dharmodgata, for instance, because beings have devoted their energy to dispute for a long time through strongly holding onto 'mine', manifestly delighting in dispute, they are unable to imagine, infer, or appreciate the absence of dispute or the absence of strongly holding onto 'mine' [like those who dwell] in Uttarakuru.⁸

"Accordingly, Dharmodgata, all disputants are unable to imagine, infer, or appreciate the ultimate whose characteristic completely transcends all argumentation."

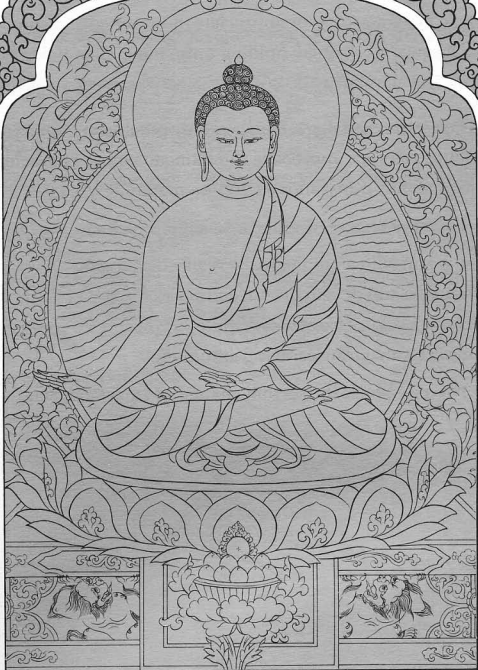
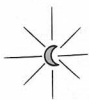
Then the Bhagavan spoke this verse:

"The realm with an individually realized character
is ineffable and devoid of conventions.

Ultimate reality is free from dispute,
a character that transcends all argument."

This completes the second chapter of Dharmodgata.





Homage to the Tathāgata Buddha Śākyamuni



སྒྲིགས་ཤིང་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ལུ་སྒྲིག་སྒྲིག་པ།

The Questions of
Suvisuddhamati

Chapter Three

Then Bodhisattva Suvisuddhamati¹ spoke to the Bhagavan: "Bhagavan, regarding what the Bhagavan formerly said: 'The ultimate, profound and subtle, having a character completely transcending sameness and difference, is difficult to realize.' What the Bhagavan has spoken so eloquently in this way is truly wondrous.

"Bhagavan, concerning this, once at a certain place I saw a great many Bodhisattvas who had entered the stage of engagement through conviction.² They had gathered together to set about considering the difference or non-difference of the compounded and the ultimate.

"Once they had assembled, a certain Bodhisattva said, 'The character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate are not different.'

"Another said, 'It is not the case that the character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate are not different: The character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate are different.'

"Another became uncertain and full of doubts and said, 'There are those who say, "The character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate are different," and those who say, "The character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate are not different." Which of these Bodhisattvas is

truthful, which is mistaken? Which is properly oriented, which is improperly oriented?’

“Bhagavan, having seen these things, I thought this: ‘All these sons and daughters of good lineage have not sought out the ultimate, the subtle character completely transcending difference or non-difference from compounded things. They are all childish, obscured, unclear, unskilled, and they are not properly oriented.’”³

The Bhagavan replied to the Bodhisattva Suvisuddhamati: “So it is! Suvisuddhamati, so it is! All these sons and daughters of good lineage do not understand the ultimate, the subtle character completely transcending difference or non-difference from compounded things. They are all childish, obscured, unclear, unskilled, and not properly oriented.

“Why is this? Suvisuddhamati, it is because those who investigate the compounded in that way neither realize the ultimate nor do they manifest the ultimate.

“Why is this? Suvisuddhamati, if the character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate were not different, then, because of that, even all ordinary childish beings would see the truth and, while still mere ordinary beings, would attain [the highest achievement] and would even achieve the

highest bliss of nirvāṇa. Moreover, they would completely and perfectly realize unsurpassed, perfect enlightenment.

“If the character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate were different, then, because of that, even those who see the truth would not be free from the signs of the compounded.

“Since they would not be free from the signs of the compounded, even those who see the truth would not be liberated from the bondage of signs. If they were not liberated from the bondage of signs, then they would also not be liberated from the bondage of errant tendencies.⁴ If they were not liberated from these two bonds, then those who see the truth would not attain [the highest achievement], and would not achieve the highest bliss of nirvāṇa. Furthermore, they would not completely and perfectly realize unsurpassed, perfect enlightenment.

“Suvisuddhamati, since ordinary beings are not seers of truth, they are merely ordinary beings. They have not attained [the highest achievement], nor have they achieved the highest bliss of nirvāṇa. Further, they have not completely and perfectly realized unsurpassed, perfect enlightenment. Therefore, it is not suitable to say, ‘The character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate are not different.’ Know by this form of explanation that those who say, ‘The character of the compounded and the character of the

ultimate are not different' are improperly oriented; their orientation is incorrect.

"Suvisuddhamati, it is not the case that seers of truth are free from the signs of the compounded; they are simply free. Moreover, seers of truth are not liberated from the bondage of signs, but they are liberated. Seers of truth are not liberated from the bondage of errant tendencies, but they are liberated.

"Since they are liberated from these two bonds, they attain the highest achievement. With unexcelled bliss they attain nirvāṇa and also completely and perfectly realize unsurpassed enlightenment. Therefore, it is not suitable to say, 'The character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate are different.'

"Know by this form of explanation that those who say, 'The character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate are different' are improperly oriented; their orientation is incorrect.

"Moreover, Suvisuddhamati, if the character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate were not different, then just as the character of the compounded would be included in the afflicted character, the character of the ultimate would also be included in the afflicted character.

"Suvisuddhamati, if the character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate were different, then the ultimate

character within all characters of compounded things would not be their general character.

“Suvisuddhamati, since the character of the ultimate is not included in the character of the afflicted, and the ultimate character in all characters of compounded things is their general character, it is neither suitable to say, ‘The character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate are not different,’ nor is it suitable to say, ‘The character of the ultimate is different.’

“Know by this form of explanation that those who say, ‘The character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate are not different’ and those who say, ‘The character of the ultimate is different’ are improperly oriented; their orientation is incorrect.

“Moreover, Suvisuddhamati, if the character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate were not different, then just as the ultimate character does not differ within all characters of compounded things, so also all the characters of compounded things would not differ. Even yogis would not search for an ultimate beyond compounded things as they are seen, heard, differentiated, and known.

“If the character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate were different, then just the absence of self and just the absence of an own-being of compounded things would not be the ultimate character [of those phenomena].

The afflicted character and the purified character would also be established as simultaneously having different characters.

“Suvisuddhamati, since the characters of the compounded both differ and do not differ, yogis search for an ultimate beyond all compounded things as they are seen, heard, differentiated, and known. The ultimate is distinguished by being the selflessness of compounded things. Further, the afflicted character and the purified character are not established as simultaneously having different characters. Therefore, it is not suitable to say that the character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate are either ‘not-different’ or ‘different’.

“Also know by this form of explanation that those who say, ‘The character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate are not different,’ and those who say, ‘They are different’ are improperly oriented; their orientation is incorrect.

“Suvisuddhamati, for instance, it is not easy to designate the whiteness of a conch as being a character that is different from the conch or as being a character that is not different from it.⁵ As it is with the whiteness of a conch, so it is with the yellowness of gold.

“It is also not easy to designate the melodiousness of the sound of the *vīṇā*⁶ as being either a character that is not different from the sound of the *vīṇā* or as being a character that is different [from it]. It is also not easy to designate the

fragrant smell of the black agaru tree⁷ as being a character that is not different from the black agaru tree or as being a character that is different from it.

"Similarly, it is not easy to designate the heat of pepper as being a character that is not different from pepper or as being a character that is different [from it]. As it is with the heat of pepper, so it is also with the astringency of myrobalan arjuna.⁸

"For instance, it is not easy to designate the softness of cotton as being either a character that is not different from the cotton or a character that is different [from it]. For instance, it is not easy to designate clarified butter as being either a character that is not different from butter or a character that is different from it. For instance, it is not easy to designate the impermanence in all compounded things, or the suffering in all contaminated things, or the selflessness in all phenomena as being characters that are not different from those things or characters that are different from them.

"Suvisuddhamati, for instance, it is not easy to designate the agitating character of desire and the character of affliction as being a character that is not different from desire or a character that is different [from it]. Know that just as it is with desire, so it is with hatred and also obscuration.

"Similarly, Suvisuddhamati, it is not appropriate to designate the character of the compounded and the character of the ultimate as being either characters that are not-different or characters that are different.

“Suvisuddhamati, in that way I have completely and perfectly realized the ultimate, which is subtle, supremely subtle, supremely profound, difficult to realize, supremely difficult to realize, and which is a character that completely transcends difference and non-difference. Having completely and perfectly realized this, I have proclaimed it and made it clear, opened it up, systematized it, and taught it comprehensively.”

Then the Bhagavan spoke these verses:

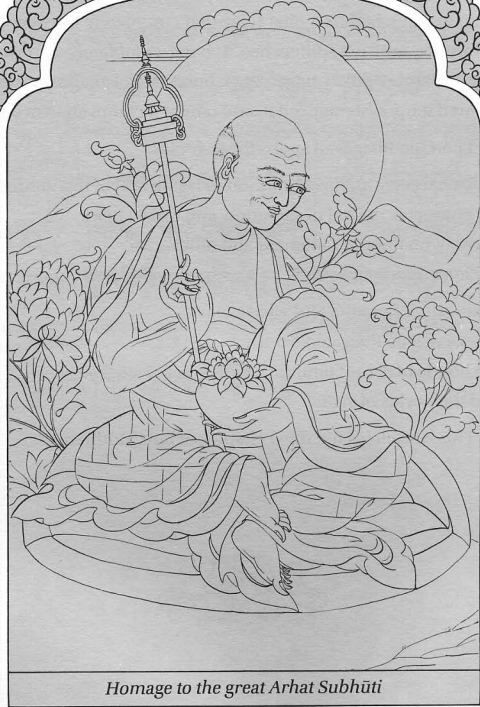
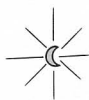
“The character of the compounded realm and of the ultimate is a character devoid of sameness and difference.

Those who impute sameness and difference are improperly oriented.

“Cultivating *śamatha* and *vipāśyanā*,
beings will be liberated from
the bonds of errant tendencies
and the bonds of signs.”

This completes the third chapter of *Suvisuddhamati*.





Homage to the great Arhat Subhūti



༥བའཕྱོད་གྱི་ལུ་སྟེ་བཞི་པ།

The Questions of
Subhūti

Chapter Four

Then the Bhagavan spoke to the venerable Subhūti:¹ “Subhūti, in the realms of sentient beings, how many sentient beings do you think there are who communicate their understanding under the influence of conceit? In the realms of sentient beings, how many sentient beings do you think there are who communicate their understanding without conceit?”²

Subhūti replied: “Bhagavan, I think that in the realms of sentient beings, those sentient beings who communicate their understanding without conceit are few. Bhagavan, I think that in the realms of sentient beings, sentient beings who communicate their understanding under the influence of conceit are immeasurable, countless, and inexpressible [in number].

“Bhagavan, at one time I lived in a great forest hermitage. Dwelling with me in that great forest hermitage were numerous monks. Early one morning, I saw the monks gather together. At that time, they communicated their understanding by describing what they had manifestly realized through observing the various forms of phenomena. One communicated his understanding based on observing the [five] aggregates: observing the signs of the aggregates, observing the arising of the aggregates, observing the disintegration of the aggregates, observing the cessation of the aggregates, and observing the actualization of the cessation of the aggregates.”³

“Just as this one communicated his understanding based upon observing the aggregates, another did so based upon

observing the sense spheres. Another did so based on observing dependent origination. Another communicated his understanding based on observing the [four] sustenances: observing the signs of the sustenances, observing the arising of the sustenances, observing the disintegration of the sustenances, observing the cessation of the sustenances, and observing the actualization of the cessation of the sustenances.⁴

“Another communicated his understanding based on observing the [four] truths: observing the signs of the truths, observing realization of the truth [of suffering], observing the truth of the abandonment [of the source of suffering], observing actualization of the truth [of the cessation of suffering], and observing meditative cultivation of the truth [of the path].⁵

“Another communicated his understanding based on observing the constituents: observing the signs of the constituents, observing the various constituents, observing the manifold constituents, observing the cessation of the constituents, and observing the actualization of the cessation of the constituents.⁶

“Another communicated his understanding based on observing the [four] mindful establishments: observing the signs of the mindful establishments, observing the discordances to the mindful establishments and the antidotes, observing the meditative cultivation of the mindful establishments, observing the arising of the mindful establishments that have not yet arisen, and observing the abiding, non-forgetting, continued

arising, and increasing and extending of the mindful establishments that have arisen.⁷

“Just as that one [observed] the mindful establishments, others [observed] the [four] correct abandonings, the [four] bases of magical abilities, the [five] powers, the [five] forces, and the [seven] branches of enlightenment. Another one communicated his understanding based on observing the eight branches of the path of the Āryas: observing the signs of the eight branches of the path of the Āryas, observing the antidotes to the discordances to the eight branches of the path of the Āryas, observing the meditative cultivation of the eight branches of the path of Āryas, observing the arising of the eight branches of the path of Āryas that have not yet arisen, and observing the abiding, non-forgetting, continued arising, and increasing and extending of the eight branches of the path of the Āryas that have arisen.⁸

“Having seen them, I thought: ‘These venerable persons communicate their understandings by describing their manifest realization of the various forms of phenomena, and, in this way, they do not seek the ultimate whose character is all of one taste.’⁹ Therefore, these venerable persons have conceit; they can only communicate their understanding under the influence of conceit.’

“Bhagavan, regarding what the Bhagavan formerly said: ‘The ultimate is profound and subtle, very difficult to realize,

supremely difficult to realize, and it is of a character that is all of one taste.' What the Bhagavan said so eloquently in this way is wondrous.

"Bhagavan, regarding those who have entered into this very teaching by the Bhagavan that the ultimate is of a character that is everywhere of one taste: Since those sentient beings who are monks have difficulty in understanding in this way, what need is there to mention Tīrthikas who are outside of this [teaching]?"

The Bhagavan replied: "So it is! Subhūti, so it is! I have perfectly and completely realized the ultimate having a character that is all of one taste, which is subtle, supremely subtle, profound, supremely profound, difficult to realize, supremely difficult to realize. Having perfectly and manifestly realized this, I have proclaimed it and made it clear, opened it up and systematized it, and taught it comprehensively.

"Why is this so? Subhūti, I teach that the object of observation for purification of the aggregates is the 'ultimate'.¹⁰ Also, Subhūti, I teach that the ultimate is an object of observation for purification of the sense spheres, dependent origination, the sustenances, the truths, the constituents, the mindful establishments, the correct abandonings, the bases of magical abilities, the powers, the forces, the branches of enlightenment, and, Subhūti, the eight branches of the path of the Āryas. That which is an object of observation for purification of the aggregates is all of one taste; its character does not differ.

“Just as it is with the aggregates, so also that which is the object of observation for purification of [phenomena] ranging from the sense spheres up to the eight branches of the path of the Āryas is all of one taste: Its character does not differ. Therefore, Subhūti, know by this form of explanation that whatever is of a character that is all of one taste is the ultimate.

“Moreover, Subhūti, monks who practice yoga, having completely realized the suchness of one aggregate, the selflessness of phenomena that is the ultimate, do not have to seek further for suchness, for the ultimate, and for selflessness in each of the other aggregates, or in the constituents, the sense spheres, dependent origination, in the sustenances, the truths, the mindful establishments, in the correct abandonings, the bases of magical abilities, in the powers, the forces, the branches of enlightenment, or in each of the eight branches of the path of the Āryas.

“They rely on the non-dual understanding that follows suchness. Through just that, they definitely apprehend and manifestly realize the ultimate which is of a character that is all of one taste. Therefore, Subhūti, also know by this form of explanation that whatever is of a character that is all of one taste is the ultimate.

“Furthermore, Subhūti, the aggregates, sense spheres, dependent origination, sustenances, truths, constituents,

mindful establishments, correct abandonings, bases of magical abilities, powers, forces, and branches of enlightenment are of mutually different characters, just as the eight branches of the path of the Āryas are of mutually different characters. If, in the same way, the suchness of these phenomena, the ultimate, the selflessness of phenomena were also of different characters, then suchness, the ultimate, the selflessness of phenomena would also be associated with causes and would be produced from causes. If it were produced from causes, it would be compounded. If it were compounded, it would not be the ultimate. If it were not the ultimate it would be necessary to search for another ultimate.

"Therefore, Subhūti, the ultimate, the selflessness of phenomena, is not produced from causes and is not compounded. It is not that which is not the ultimate, and it is not necessary to search for an ultimate other than that ultimate.

"Whether Tathāgatas arise or do not arise, because phenomena abide in permanent, permanent time and in everlasting, everlasting time, the sphere of reality of phenomena alone abides.¹¹ Therefore, Subhūti, know by this form of explanation that whatever is of a character that is all of one taste is the ultimate.

"Subhūti, for example, with respect to the differing signs, the manifold various aspects of form, space is signless, non-conceptual, and unchanging. It is of a character that is all of

one taste. Similarly, Subhūti, with respect to phenomena that are of different characters, the ultimate is also to be viewed as being of a character that is all of one taste.”¹²

Then the Bhagavan spoke this verse:

“Buddhas teach that the ultimate is undifferentiated and is of a character all of one taste.

Those who conceptualize difference within it abide in conceit and are obscured.”

This completes the fourth chapter of Subhūti.





Homage to the Tathāgata Buddha Śākyamuni



ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཡུལ་པའི་ལུ་སྟེ་ལྟ་བུ།

The Questions of
Viśālamati

Chapter Five

Then Bodhisattva Viśālamati¹ questioned the Bhagavan: "Bhagavan, when you say, 'Bodhisattvas are wise with respect to the secrets of mind, thought, and consciousness; Bodhisattvas are wise with respect to the secrets of mind, thought, and consciousness,' Bhagavan, just how are Bodhisattvas wise with respect to the secrets of mind, thought, and consciousness?² For what reason does the Tathāgata designate a Bodhisattva as wise with respect to the secrets of mind, thought, and consciousness?"

The Bhagavan replied to the Bodhisattva Viśālamati: "Viśālamati, you are involved in [asking] this in order to benefit many beings, to bring happiness to many beings, out of sympathy for the world, and for the sake of the welfare, benefit, and happiness of many beings, including gods and humans. Your intention in questioning the Tathāgata about this subject is good. It is good! Therefore, Viśālamati, listen well and I will describe for you the way [Bodhisattvas] are wise with respect to the secrets of mind, thought, and consciousness.

"Viśālamati, whatever type of sentient being there may be in this cyclic existence with its six kinds of beings, those sentient beings manifest a body and arise within states of birth such as egg-born, or womb-born, or moisture-born, or spontaneously-born.³

"Initially, in dependence upon two types of appropriation—the appropriation of the physical sense powers associated

with a support and the appropriation of predispositions which proliferate conventional designations with respect to signs, names, and concepts—the mind which has all seeds ripens; it develops, increases, and expands in its operations.⁴ Although two types of appropriation exist in the form realm, appropriation is not twofold in the formless realm.⁵

“Viśālamati, consciousness is also called the ‘appropriating consciousness’ because it holds and appropriates the body in that way.⁶ It is called the ‘basis-consciousness’ because there is the same establishment and abiding within those bodies.⁷ Thus they are wholly connected and thoroughly connected. It is called ‘mind’ because it collects and accumulates forms, sounds, smells, tastes, and tangible objects.⁸

“Viśālamati, the sixfold collection of consciousness—the eye consciousness, ear consciousness, nose consciousness, tongue consciousness, body consciousness, and mind consciousness—arises depending upon and abiding in that appropriating consciousness. An eye consciousness arises depending on an eye and a form in association with consciousness. Functioning together with that eye consciousness, a conceptual mental consciousness arises at the same time, having the same objective reference.

“Viśālamati, [an ear consciousness, a nose consciousness, a tongue consciousness, and] a bodily consciousness arise depending on an ear, a nose, a tongue, and a body in association

with consciousness and [sound, smell, taste, and] tangibles. Functioning together with [nose, ear, tongue, and bodily] consciousness, a conceptual mental consciousness arises at the same time, having the same objective reference.

"If there arises one eye consciousness, there arises together with it only one mental consciousness, which has the same object of activity as the eye consciousness. Likewise, if two, three, four, or five consciousnesses arise together, then there still arises, together with them, only one conceptual mental consciousness, which has the same object of activity as the fivefold collection of consciousness.

"Viśālamati, for example, if the causal conditions for the arising of one wave in a great flowing river are present, then just one wave will arise. If the causal conditions for two waves or many waves are present, then multiple waves will arise. But the river's own continuity will not be broken; it will never be entirely stopped.

"If the causal conditions for the arising of a single image in a perfectly clear round mirror are present, then just one image will arise. If the causal conditions for the arising of two images or of many images are present, then multiple images will arise. However, that round mirror will not be transformed into the nature of the image; they will never be fully linked.

"Viśālamati, just as it is with the water and the mirror, if, depending upon and abiding in the appropriating conscious-

ness, the causal conditions for the simultaneous arising of one eye consciousness are present, then just one eye consciousness will arise one time. If the causal conditions for the single arising of up to the fivefold assemblage of consciousness are present, then up to that fivefold assemblage of consciousness will also arise one time.

“Viśālamati, it is like this: Bodhisattvas who rely on knowledge of the system of doctrine and abide in knowledge of the system of doctrine are wise with respect to the secrets of mind, thought, and consciousness. However, when the Tathāgata designates Bodhisattvas as being wise with respect to the secrets of mind, thought, and consciousness, it is not only because of this that he designates those Bodhisattvas as being [wise] in all ways.⁹

“Viśālamati, those Bodhisattvas [wise in all ways] do not perceive their own internal appropriators; they also do not perceive an appropriating consciousness, but they are in accord with reality. They also do not perceive a basis, nor do they perceive a basis-consciousness. They do not perceive accumulations, nor do they perceive mind. They do not perceive an eye, nor do they perceive form, nor do they perceive an eye-consciousness. They do not perceive an ear, nor do they perceive a sound, nor do they perceive an ear-consciousness. They do not perceive a nose, nor do they perceive a smell, nor do they perceive a nose-consciousness. They do not perceive a tongue, nor do they perceive a taste, nor do they

perceive a tongue consciousness. They do not perceive a body, nor do they perceive a tangible object, nor do they perceive a bodily consciousness. Viśālamati, these Bodhisattvas do not perceive their own particular thoughts, nor do they perceive phenomena, nor do they perceive a mental consciousness, but they are in accord with reality. These Bodhisattvas are said to be 'wise with respect to the ultimate'. The Tathāgata designates Bodhisattvas who are wise with respect to the ultimate as also being 'wise with respect to the secrets of mind, thought, and consciousness'.

"Viśālamati, this is how Bodhisattvas are wise with respect to the secrets of mind, thought, and consciousness. When the Tathāgata designates Bodhisattvas as being 'wise with respect to the secrets of mind, thought, and consciousness', he designates them as such for this very reason."

Then the Bhagavan spoke this verse:

"If the appropriating consciousness, deep and subtle,
all its seeds flowing like a river,
were conceived as a self, that would not be right.
Thus I have not taught this to children."¹⁰

This completes the fifth chapter of Viśālamati.





ཡོན་ཏན་འབྱུང་གནས་ཀྱི་ལུ་སྟོན་ཐུག་པ།

The Questions of
Guṇākara

Chapter Six



Homage to the Tathāgata Buddha Śākyamuni

Then Bodhisattva Guṇākara¹ questioned the Bhagavan: "Bhagavan, when you say 'Bodhisattvas are wise with respect to the character of phenomena; Bodhisattvas are wise with respect to the character of phenomena,' Bhagavan, just how are Bodhisattvas wise with respect to the character of phenomena? For what reason does the Tathāgata designate a Bodhisattva as being wise with respect to the character of phenomena?"

The Bhagavan replied to the Bodhisattva Guṇākara: "Guṇākara, you are involved in [asking] this in order to benefit many beings, to bring happiness to many beings, out of sympathy for the world, and for the sake of the welfare, benefit, and happiness of many beings, including gods and humans. Your intention in questioning the Tathāgata about this subject is good! It is good! Therefore, Guṇākara, listen well and I will describe for you how [Bodhisattvas] are wise with respect to the character of phenomena.

"Guṇākara, there are three characteristics of phenomena. What are these three? They are the imputational character, the other-dependent character, and the thoroughly established character.

"Guṇākara, what is the imputational character of phenomena?² It is that which is imputed as a name or symbol in terms of the own-being or attributes of phenomena in order to subsequently designate any convention whatsoever.

“Guṇākara, what is the other-dependent character of phenomena? It is simply the dependent origination of phenomena. It is like this: Because this exists, that arises; because this is produced, that is produced. It ranges from: ‘Due to the condition of ignorance, compositional factors [arise],’ up to: ‘In this way, the whole great assemblage of suffering arises.’³

“Guṇākara, what is the thoroughly established character of phenomena? It is the suchness of phenomena. Through diligence and through proper mental application, Bodhisattvas establish realization and cultivate realization of [the thoroughly established character]. Thus it is what establishes [all the stages] up to unsurpassed, complete, perfect enlightenment.⁴

“Guṇākara, for example, the imputational character should be viewed as being like the defects of clouded vision⁵ in the eyes of a person with clouded vision. Guṇākara, for example, the other-dependent character should be viewed as being like the appearance of the manifestations of clouded vision in that very [person], manifestations which appear as a net of hairs, or as insects, or as sesame seeds; or as a blue manifestation, or a yellow manifestation, or a red manifestation, or a white manifestation.

“Guṇākara, for example, the thoroughly established character should be viewed as being like the unerring objective reference, the natural objective reference of the eyes when that person’s eyes have become pure and free from the defects of clouded vision.

"Guṇākara, for example, when a very clear crystal comes in contact with the color blue, it then appears as a precious gem, such as a sapphire or a mahānīla.⁶ Further, by mistaking it for a precious gem such as a sapphire or a mahānīla, sentient beings are deluded.

"When it comes in contact with the color red, it then appears as a precious gem such as a ruby and, by mistaking it for a precious gem such as a ruby, sentient beings are deluded. When it comes in contact with the color green, it then appears as a precious gem such as an emerald and, further, by mistaking it for a precious gem such as an emerald, sentient beings are deluded. When it comes in contact with the color gold, it then appears as gold and, further, by mistaking it for gold, sentient beings are deluded.

"Guṇākara, for example, you should see that in the same way as a very clear crystal comes in contact with a color, the other-dependent character comes in contact with the predispositions for conventional designations that are the imputational character. For example, in the same way as a very clear crystal is mistaken for a precious substance such as a sapphire, a mahānīla, a ruby, an emerald, or gold, see how the other-dependent character is apprehended as the imputational character.

"Guṇākara, for example, you should see that the other-dependent nature is like that of very clear crystal. For example, a clear crystal is not thoroughly established in permanent,

permanent time or in everlasting, everlasting time as having the character of a precious substance like a sapphire, a mahānīla, a ruby, an emerald, or gold, and is without the natures [of such things].

"In the same way, you should see that since the other-dependent character is not thoroughly established in permanent, permanent time, or in everlasting, everlasting time as being the imputational character, and is without its nature, it is the thoroughly established character.

"Guṇākara, in dependence upon names that are connected with signs, the imputational character is known. In dependence upon strongly adhering to the other-dependent character as being the imputational character, the other-dependent character is known. In dependence upon absence of strong adherence to the other-dependent character as being the imputational character, the thoroughly established character is known.⁷

"Guṇākara, when Bodhisattvas know the imputational character as it really is with respect to the other-dependent character of phenomena, then they know characterless phenomena as they really are.

"Guṇākara, when Bodhisattvas know the other-dependent character as it really is, then they know the phenomena of afflicted character as they really are.

“Guṇākara, when Bodhisattvas know the thoroughly established character as it really is, then they know the phenomena of purified character as they really are.

“Guṇākara, when Bodhisattvas know characterless phenomena as they really are with respect to the other-dependent character, then they completely abandon phenomena of afflicted character. When they have completely abandoned phenomena of afflicted character, they realize phenomena of purified character.

“Therefore, Guṇākara, Bodhisattvas know the imputational character of phenomena, the other-dependent character, and the thoroughly established character of phenomena as they really are. Once they know characterlessness, the thoroughly afflicted character, and the purified character as they really are, then they know characterless phenomena as they really are. They completely abandon the phenomena of afflicted character, and when they have completely abandoned phenomena of afflicted character, then they realize phenomena of purified character.

“This is how Bodhisattvas are wise with respect to the character of phenomena. When the Tathāgata designates Bodhisattvas as being wise with respect to the character of phenomena, he designates them as such for this very reason.”

Then the Bhagavan spoke these verses:

“When one knows characterless phenomena,
one abandons phenomena of afflicted character.
When one abandons phenomena of afflicted character,
one attains phenomena of pure character.

“Heedless beings, overcome by faults and lazy,
do not consider the faults of compounded phenomena.
Weak regarding stable and fluctuating phenomena,
they are objects of compassion.”

This completes the sixth chapter of Guṇākara.





Homage to the Tathāgata Buddha Śākyamuni



།དོན་དམ་ཡང་དག་འཕགས་ཀྱི་ལུ་སྟེ་བདུན་པ།

The Questions of
Paramārthasamudgata

Chapter Seven

Then Bodhisattva Paramārthasamudgata¹ questioned the Bhagavan: “Bhagavan, when I was in seclusion there arose this thought: ‘The Bhagavan has spoken in many ways of the own-character of the aggregates and further spoken of their character of production, their character of disintegration, and their abandonment and realization. Just as he has spoken of the aggregates, he has also spoken of the sense spheres, dependent origination, and the sustenances.

“The Bhagavan has also spoken in many ways of the [own-] character of the [four] truths and further spoken of the realization [of suffering], abandonment [of the source of suffering], actualization [of the cessation of suffering], and meditative cultivation [of the path].

“The Bhagavan has also spoken in many ways of the own-character of the constituents and has further spoken of the various constituents, the manifold constituents, and of their abandonment and realization.

“The Bhagavan has also spoken in many ways of the own-character of the mindful establishments and further spoken of their discordances and antidotes, their meditative cultivation, the production of [the mindful establishments] that have not yet arisen, the abiding of those that have arisen, their non-forgetting, continued arising, increasing, and extending.

“Just as he spoke of the mindful establishments, he has also spoken of the correct abandonings, the bases of magical

abilities, the powers, the forces, and the branches of enlightenment. The Bhagavan has also spoken in many ways of the own-character of the eight branches of the path of the Āryas and further spoken of their discordances and antidotes, their meditative cultivation, the production of those that have not yet arisen, the abiding of those that have arisen, their non-forgetting, continued arising, increasing, and extending.

“The Bhagavan has also said that all phenomena lack own-being, that all phenomena are unproduced, unceasing, quiescent from the start, and naturally in a state of nirvāṇa.’

“Then I thought, ‘Of what was the Bhagavan thinking when he said, “All phenomena lack own-being; all phenomena are unproduced, unceasing, quiescent from the start, and naturally in a state of nirvāṇa?”’

“Why was the Bhagavan thinking, “All phenomena lack own-being; all phenomena are unproduced, unceasing, quiescent from the start, and naturally in a state of nirvāṇa?”’ I ask the Bhagavan the meaning of this.”²

The Bhagavan replied to Bodhisattva Paramārthasamudgata: “Paramārthasamudgata, your thought, virtuously arisen, is good! It is good! Paramārthasamudgata, you are involved [in asking] this in order to benefit many beings, to bring happiness to many beings, out of sympathy for the world, and for the sake of the welfare, benefit, and happiness of beings,

including gods and humans. Your intention in questioning the Tathāgata about this subject is good! Therefore, Paramārthasamudgata, listen well and I will explain to you what I was thinking when I said: 'All phenomena lack an own-being; all phenomena are unproduced, unceasing, quiescent from the start, and naturally in a state of nirvāṇa.'

"Paramārthasamudgata, thinking of the three types of lack of own-being of phenomena—the lack of own-being in terms of character, the lack of own-being in terms of production, and an ultimate lack of own-being—I taught, 'All phenomena lack own-being.'

"Paramārthasamudgata, what is the lack of own-being in terms of character of phenomena? It is the imputational character. Why is this? The [imputational character] is a character posited as names and symbols, but it does not subsist by way of its own character. Therefore, it is the 'lack of own-being in terms of character'.

"Paramārthasamudgata, what is the lack of own-being in terms of production of phenomena? It is the other-dependent character of phenomena. Why is this? The [other-dependent character] arises through the force of other conditions and not by itself. Therefore, it is the 'lack of own-being in terms of production'.

"Paramārthasamudgata, what is an ultimate lack of own-being of phenomena? Phenomena that are dependently

originated lack an own-being due to the lack of own-being in terms of production. They also lack own-being due to an ultimate lack of own-being. Why is this? Paramārthasamudgata, I teach that whatever is an object of observation for purification of phenomena is the ultimate.³ Since the other-dependent character is not an object of observation for purification, it is an 'ultimate lack of own-being'.

"Moreover, Paramārthasamudgata, the thoroughly established character of phenomena is also 'an ultimate lack of own-being'. Why is this? Paramārthasamudgata, that which is the 'selflessness of phenomena' of phenomena is known as their 'lack of own-being'. That is the ultimate. Since the ultimate is distinguished as the lack of own-being of all phenomena, it is an 'ultimate lack of own-being'.

"Paramārthasamudgata, for example, you should view lack of own-being in terms of character as being like a sky-flower.⁴ For example, Paramārthasamudgata, you should also view the lack of own-being in terms of production as being like a magical apparition.

"The ultimate lack of own-being should be viewed as being something other than those [first two characters]. For example, Paramārthasamudgata, just as [space] is distinguished by being just the lack of own-being of forms in space and as pervading everywhere, in the same way the ultimate lack of

own-being is distinguished by being the selflessness of phenomena and should be viewed as all-pervasive and unitary.

"Paramārthasamudgata, thinking of those three types of lack of own-being, I taught, 'All phenomena lack own-being.'

"Paramārthasamudgata, thinking of lack of own-being in terms of character, I taught: 'All phenomena are unproduced, unceasing, quiescent from the start, and naturally in a state of nirvāṇa.' Why is this?

"Paramārthasamudgata, that which does not exist by way of its own character is not produced. That which is not produced does not cease. That which is not produced and does not cease is quiescent from the start. That which is quiescent from the start is naturally in a state of nirvāṇa. That which is naturally in a state of nirvāṇa does not have even the slightest remainder that could pass beyond sorrow. Therefore, thinking of lack of own-being in terms of character, I taught, 'All phenomena are unproduced, unceasing, quiescent from the start, and naturally in a state of nirvāṇa.'⁵

"Moreover, Paramārthasamudgata, thinking of an ultimate lack of own-being that is distinguished by being the selflessness of phenomena, I taught: 'All phenomena are unproduced, unceasing, quiescent from the start, and naturally in a state of nirvāṇa.' Why is this?

"An ultimate lack of own-being, distinguished by being the selflessness of phenomena, abides solely in permanent,

permanent time and everlasting, everlasting time. That un compounded reality of phenomena is free from all afflictions. That which is un compounded, which abides in permanent, permanent time and everlasting, everlasting time due to being this very reality, is un compounded. Therefore, it is un produced and un ceasing. Because it is free from all afflictions, it is quiescent from the start and is naturally in a state of nirvāṇa. Therefore, thinking of an ultimate lack of own-being that is distinguished by being the selflessness⁸ of phenomena, I taught, 'All phenomena are un produced, un ceasing, quiescent from the start, and naturally in a state of nirvāṇa.'

"Paramārthasamudgata, I do not designate the three types of lack of own-being because sentient beings in the realms of sentient beings view the own-being of the imputational as distinct [from the other-dependent and the thoroughly established character] in terms of own-being; or because they view the other-dependent and the thoroughly established as distinct in terms of own-being. Superimposing the own-being of the imputational onto the own-being of the other-dependent and the thoroughly established, sentient beings subsequently attribute conventions of the character of the own-being of the imputational to the own-being of the other-dependent and the thoroughly established.

"To the extent that they subsequently attribute such conventions, their minds are infused with conventional designations. Thereafter, because of being bound to conventional

designations or due to predispositions toward conventional designations, they strongly adhere to the character of the own-being of the imputational as the own-being of the other-dependent and the thoroughly established.

“To the extent that they strongly adhere [to this], they strongly adhere to the own-being of the imputational as the own-being of the other-dependent. Due to these causes and conditions, in the future [this view of] the own-being of the other-dependent proliferates. Based on this, the afflictive afflictions give rise to further afflictions.

“The afflictions of actions and the afflictions of birth give rise to further afflictions. For a long time sentient beings will wander, transmigrating among hell beings, or animals, or hungry ghosts, or gods, or asuras, or humans. They will not pass beyond cyclic existence.

“Paramāthasamudgata, I initially teach doctrines starting with the lack of own-being in terms of production to those beings who have not generated roots of virtue, who have not purified obstructions, who have not ripened their continuums, who do not have much conviction, and who have not completed the accumulations of merit and wisdom. When they hear those doctrines, they understand dependently originated compounded phenomena as being impermanent. They know them to be phenomena that are unstable, unworthy of confidence, and changeable, whereupon they develop aversion and antipathy toward all compounded phenomena.

“Having developed aversion and antipathy, they turn away from wrong-doing. They do not commit any wrong-doing, and they adhere to virtue. Because of adhering to virtue, they generate roots of virtue that were not previously generated. They also purify obscurations that were not previously purified. They also ripen their continuums, which were not previously ripened. On that basis, they have great conviction, and they complete the accumulations of merit and wisdom.

“In that way they complete everything from the generation of roots of virtue up to the accumulation of merit and wisdom. However, because they do not understand, as they are, the two aspects pertaining to lack of own-being in terms of production—lack of own-being in terms of character and ultimate lack of own-being—they do not become wholly averse toward all compounded phenomena. They do not become separated from attachment. They do not become fully liberated. They do not become fully liberated from the afflictive afflictions nor fully liberated from the afflictions of actions nor fully liberated from the afflictions of birth.

“The Tathāgatha further teaches them doctrines beginning with lack of own-being in terms of character and ultimate lack of own-being. Thus they become wholly averse toward all compounded phenomena, separated from attachment, and liberated; they pass beyond the afflictive afflictions, pass beyond the afflictions of actions, and pass beyond the afflictions of birth.

"Hearing these doctrines, they do not strongly adhere to the own-being of the other-dependent as being of the character of the own-being of the imputational. Further, they become confident that the lack of own-being in terms of production does not exist as an ultimate own-being in the sense that it is just an absence of own-being in terms of character with respect to those [phenomena]. They fully distinguish this. They realize it as it is and, in this way, their understanding is not infused with conventional designations. Thereafter, because they are not bound to conventional designations and because their understanding is free from predispositions toward conventions, in this lifetime they produce the ability to understand the other-dependent character. In future lives they achieve cessation through cutting off the continuum.

"Based on this, they become wholly averse toward all compounded phenomena, free from attachment, and liberated. They become fully liberated from the afflictive afflictions, the afflictions of actions, and the afflictions of birth.

"Paramārthasamudgata, through just this path and through just this attainment, even sentient beings of the Śrāvaka lineage attain the establishment and abiding of unsurpassed nirvāṇa. Through just this path and through just this attainment, sentient beings of the Pratyekabuddha lineage and sentient beings of the Tathāgata lineage also attain the establishment and abiding of unsurpassed nirvāṇa. Thus, there is a

single path of purification for Śrāvakas, Pratyekabuddhas, and Bodhisattvas, and there is a single purification. There is no other. Thinking of that, therefore, I have taught that there is a single vehicle. Yet in the realms of sentient beings, there are various types of sentient beings, such as those who are naturally of weak faculties, or naturally of middling faculties, or naturally of sharp faculties.

“Paramārthasamudgata, even if all the Buddhas were to attempt to establish someone having the Śrāvaka lineage, who proceeds solely towards peacefulness, in the heart of enlightenment, that person would be unable to attain unsurpassed, perfect enlightenment.⁶ Why is this? Due to extremely limited compassion and great fear of suffering, that one is simply by nature of an inferior lineage. Just as his compassion is extremely limited, so he turns away from the welfare of sentient beings. Just as he is extremely afraid of suffering, so he turns away from all the activities of compounded phenomena.

“I do not describe those who turn away from the welfare of sentient beings and who turn away from all the activities of compounded existence as unsurpassably, perfectly enlightened. They are ‘those who seek peace for themselves alone’.

“[However] I teach that Śrāvakas who evolve with respect to enlightenment are a type of Bodhisattva.⁷ It is like this: Having become liberated from the afflictive obstructions, they

liberate their minds from the obstructions to omniscience when they are encouraged by the Tathāgatas. Thus, the Tathāgata designates those who initially work for their own benefit and are freed from the afflictive obstructions as being of the Śrāvaka lineage.⁸

“Paramārthasamudgata, it is like this: My disciplinary doctrine is explained well, is complete, and is taught with a very pure thought. With respect to this well-taught doctrine, degrees of conviction appear among sentient beings.”⁹

“Paramārthasamudgata, thinking of just these three types of lack of own-being, through the teachings that are Sūtras of interpretable meaning, the Tathāgata taught such doctrines as: ‘All phenomena lack own-being; all phenomena are unproduced, unceasing, quiescent from the start, and naturally in a state of nirvāṇa.’

“When those sentient beings who have generated great roots of virtue, purified the obstructions, ripened their continuums, who have great conviction and have completed the great accumulations of merit and wisdom¹⁰ hear those doctrines, they understand the teaching just as it is in accordance with my thought.¹¹ They further understand those doctrines to be doctrine. Through wisdom they also realize the meaning just as it is. Through cultivating realization of that [meaning], they rapidly attain the final state. Regarding [these doctrines],

they develop faith, [thinking], 'Ah! The Bhagavan is completely and perfectly enlightened. He is completely and perfectly enlightened with respect to all phenomena.'

"When sentient beings who have not generated great roots of virtue, have not purified the obstructions, have not ripened their continuums, do not have great conviction, and have not completed the great accumulations of merit and wisdom, who are honest and have an honest nature, who are unable to remove conceptuality, who are not fixated on holding their own view to be supreme, [when such beings] hear those doctrines, they do not understand the teaching just as it is in accordance with my thought.

"Still, [these beings] develop conviction and also attain faith in these doctrines. They are convinced that: "These Sūtras taught by the Tathāgata are profound, brilliantly profound, are endowed with emptiness, are difficult to perceive, difficult to understand, unanalyzable, not subject to dispute, and are known by the wise capable of fine discernment and by the astute.'

"They think: 'We do not understand the meaning of those Sūtras or the meaning of those teachings.' They think: 'The enlightenment of the Buddha is profound. The reality of phenomena is also profound. The Tathāgata alone knows; we do not understand. The doctrinal teaching of Tathāgatas influences sentient beings according to their diverse beliefs. The Tathāgatas' wisdom and perception are infinite, whereas our

understanding and perception are like mere cowprints.' With reverence toward these Sūtras, they copy the letters. Having copied them, they also memorize them, read them, propagate them, venerate them, receive their oral transmission, recite them, and repeat them to others. However, because they do not understand these profound teachings in accordance with my thought, they are unable to apply themselves to the types of meditative cultivation. Based on that, they progress due to the accumulation of merit; they also progress due to the accumulation of wisdom. They also progressively ripen their continuums which were not previously ripened.

"When other sentient beings who have not completed [the stages of the path] up to the great accumulations of merit and wisdom, who are not honest and do not have an honest nature, who are able to remove conceptuality, but who are fixated on holding their own view to be supreme¹² hear these doctrines, they do not understand this profound explanation just as it is, in accordance with my thought.

"Although they believe in the doctrine, they strongly adhere just to the literal meaning of the doctrine, [thinking], 'All phenomena just lack own-being; all phenomena are just unproduced, just unceasing, just quiescent from the start, just naturally in a state of nirvāṇa.' Based on this, they adopt the view that all phenomena do not exist and that character does not exist.¹³ Having adopted the view of non-existence and the

view that character does not exist, they also deprecate everything through [deprecating] all characters. Because they deprecate the imputational character of phenomena, they also deprecate the other-dependent character of phenomena and the thoroughly established character.

“Why is this? *Paramārthasamudgata*, if the other-dependent and thoroughly established characters exist, then the imputational character is also understood.¹⁴ However, those who see the other-dependent character and the thoroughly established character as non-existent also deprecate the imputational character. Therefore, they also ‘deprecate all three types of character’. They perceive my doctrine to be doctrine, but they perceive what is not the meaning to be the meaning.

“Those who perceive my doctrine to be doctrine but perceive what is not the meaning to be the meaning also understand the doctrine to be doctrine. They also understand what is not the meaning to be the meaning. Due to belief in the doctrine, they progress by means of virtuous qualities. But, due to strongly adhering to what is not the meaning, they fall away from wisdom. When they fall away from wisdom, they also fall away from vast and immeasurable virtuous qualities.

“Others, having heard from them that the doctrine is the doctrine, but that what is not the meaning is the meaning, delight in that view. Because they conceive the doctrine to be doctrine and conceive what is not the meaning to be the

meaning, they strongly adhere to doctrine as being doctrine and to what is not the meaning as being the meaning. Know that based on this they also fall away from virtuous qualities.

“When people who do not delight in such views hear from others that phenomena lack an own-being and hear that phenomena are unproduced, unceasing, quiescent from the start, and naturally in a state of nirvāṇa, they become fearful and develop misgivings, saying, ‘This is not the word of the Buddha. This is a statement from Māra!’ Thinking in this way they also deprecate these Sūtras. They reject them, condemn them, and speak badly of them.

“Based on this, they earn great misfortune, and they also meet with great karmic obstructions. Also based on this, since they cause many beings to meet with great obstructions, they deceive them. I state that those who view all characters as non-existent and who teach what is not the meaning to be the meaning possess great karmic obstructions.

“Paramārthasamudgata, when those sentient beings who have not produced roots of virtue, have not purified the obstructions, have not ripened their continuums, do not have great conviction, have not completed the accumulations of merit and wisdom, who are not honest and do not have an honest nature, and who are unable to remove conceptuality and who are fixated on holding their own view to be supreme hear these doctrines, they do not understand the teaching

just as it is in accordance with my thought. They also do not develop belief in this doctrine; they perceive the doctrine as non-doctrine and perceive the meaning to be what is not the meaning. Strongly adhering to the doctrine as non-doctrine and to the meaning as not being the meaning, they say: 'This is not the word of the Buddha. This is a statement from Māra!' Thinking in this way, they deprecate these Sūtras. They reject them, condemn them, speak badly of them, and also engage in interpolation. In many ways they are involved with these Sūtras in order to reject, undermine, and eradicate them. They also perceive people who believe in these [Sūtras] to be enemies. From the very beginning, they are obstructed by karmic obstructions. Based on that, they continue to be obstructed by similar karmic obstructions. It is easy to designate the beginning of these karmic obstructions; it is difficult to designate during how many hundred thousands of millions of epochs they will continue to arise.

"Paramārthasamudgata, in that way, degrees of conviction appear among sentient beings with respect to this well-taught doctrine, my disciplinary instruction which is explained well, is complete, and is taught with a very pure thought."

Then the Bhagavan spoke these verses:

"What sage would propound, without a thought behind it,
that dharmas lack own-being; dharmas are unproduced;
dharmas are unceasing; dharmas are quiescent from the start;
that all dharmas are naturally in a state of nirvāṇa?

"I explain lack of own-being in terms of character,
in terms of production, and in terms of the ultimate.
Whatever sage understands the thought behind this
will not travel a path of degeneration.

"The path of purity is this alone;
there is one purity; there is no other.
Thus this one vehicle is designated,
although there are various types of beings.

"In the realms of beings, innumerable beings
seek nirvāṇa for themselves alone.
Those who, steadfast and compassionate,
attain nirvāṇa without abandoning beings are very rare.

"The uncontaminated realm of those who are liberated
is subtle, inconceivable, equal, and undifferentiated,
all-beneficial, free from suffering and affliction,
inexpressible in dualistic terms, blissful and stable."

Then the Bodhisattva Paramārthasamudgata said to the
Bhagavan: "Bhagavan, since [your] teaching, having the thought
of the Buddhas and the Bhagavans, is subtle, is supremely
subtle, profound, supremely profound, difficult to realize,
supremely difficult to realize, it is amazing and wondrous.

"Bhagavan, I understand the meaning of that which the
Bhagavan said in this way: The imputational character con-
sists of [first] those things that are posited in terms of names

and symbols—the objects of conceptual activity, the bases of the imputational character, the signs of compounded phenomena—as the character of the own-being or as the character of attributes of ‘the form aggregate’; and [second], those things that are posited in terms of names and symbols as the character of own-being or the character of attributes of ‘the production of a form aggregate’, or its ‘cessation’, or the ‘abandonment and realization of a form aggregate’. In dependence upon that, the Bhagavan designated the lack of own-being in terms of character of phenomena.

“Those things that are the objects of conceptual activity, the bases of the imputational character, the signs of compounded phenomena, are the other-dependent character. In dependence upon that, the Bhagavan designated the lack of own-being in terms of production of phenomena and, additionally, an ultimate lack of own-being.

“Bhagavan, I understand the meaning of the Bhagavan’s teaching in this way: Those very objects of conceptual activity, the bases of the imputational character, and the signs of compounded phenomena are not established as being that imputational character, and they lack own-being. Because of just that, the lack of own-being, selflessness of phenomena, suchness, and object of observation for purification are the thoroughly established character. In dependence upon that, the Bhagavan additionally designated the ultimate lack of own-being of phenomena.

“Just as this is applied to the form aggregate, so it should also be applied to the remaining aggregates. Just as this is applied to the aggregates, so it should also be applied to each of the sense spheres that comprise the twelve sense spheres. The same is true for each of the limbs of existence that comprise the twelve limbs of existence. The same is true for each of the sustenances that comprise the four sustenances. The same is true for each of the constituents that comprise the six constituents and the eighteen constituents.

“Bhagavan, I understand the meaning of the Bhagavan’s teaching in this way: The imputational character consists of those things posited in terms of names and symbols—which are the objects of conceptual activity, the bases of the imputational character, and the signs of compounded phenomena—as the character of own-being and the character of attributes of the ‘truth of suffering and understanding the truth of suffering’. In dependence upon that, the Bhagavan designated lack of own-being in terms of character of phenomena.

“Those things that are the objects of conceptual activity, the bases of the imputational character, and the signs of compounded phenomena are the other-dependent character. In dependence upon that, the Bhagavan additionally designated the lack of own-being in terms of production of phenomena and an ultimate lack of own-being.

“Bhagavan, I understand the meaning of the Bhagavan’s teaching in this way: Those things that are the objects of

conceptual activity, the bases of the imputational character, and the signs of compounded phenomena are not established as being the imputational character. And because of just that own-being, the lack of own-being, the selflessness of phenomena, suchness, and the object of observation for purification are the thoroughly established character. In dependence upon that, the Bhagavan additionally designated an ultimate lack of own-being of phenomena.

“Just as this is applied to the noble truth of suffering, so it should be applied to the remaining truths. Just as this is applied to the truths, so it should be applied to the mindful establishments, the correct abandonings, the bases of magical abilities, the powers, the forces, the branches of enlightenment, and each of the branches of the path of the Āryas.

“Bhagavan, I understand the meaning of the Bhagavan’s teaching in this way: The imputational character consists of those things posited in terms of names and symbols—which are objects of conceptual activity, the bases of the imputational character, and the signs of compounded phenomena—as the character of own-being or the character of attributes of ‘pure samādhi’ or the ‘discordances and antidotes of samādhis’, or the ‘production of those which have not been produced’, or the ‘abiding of those which have been produced, and their non-forgetting, their further arising, and their increasing and extending’. In dependence upon that, the

Bhagavan designated the lack of own-being in terms of character of phenomena.

“Those things which are the objects of conceptual activity, the bases of the imputational character, and the signs of compounded phenomena are the other-dependent character. In dependence upon that, the Bhagavan additionally designated the lack of own-being in terms of production of phenomena and an ultimate lack of own-being.

“Bhagavan, I understand the meaning of the Bhagavan’s teaching in this way: Those things which are the objects of conceptual activity, the bases of the imputational character, and the signs of compounded phenomena are not established as being the imputational character. And because of just that own-being, the lack of own-being, the selflessness of phenomena, suchness, and the object of observation for purification are the thoroughly established character. In dependence upon that, the Bhagavan additionally designated an ultimate lack of own-being of phenomena.

“Bhagavan, for example, dried ginger is added to all medicinal powders and elixirs. Similarly, beginning with the lack of own-being of phenomena, and beginning with [the teachings that phenomena are] unproduced, unceasing, quiescent from the start, and naturally in a state of nirvāṇa, the Bhagavan

also placed teachings of definitive meaning in all Sūtras of interpretable meaning.¹⁵

“Bhagavan, for example, the background of a painting, whether it is blue, yellow, red, or white, is of one taste throughout the entire painted work and also highlights the details of the painting. Similarly, the Bhagavan’s teachings of definitive meaning, ranging from the lack of own-being of phenomena to their being naturally in a state of nirvāṇa, are all of one taste in all Sūtras of interpretable meaning and also highlight meanings that are interpretable.

“Bhagavan, for example, when one adds clarified butter to all types of dishes, for instance cooked grain or cooked meat, it is very satisfying. Similarly, when the Bhagavan’s teachings of definitive meaning, ranging from the lack of own-being of phenomena to their being naturally in a state of nirvāṇa, are added to all Sūtras of interpretable meaning, it is satisfying, supremely satisfying!

“Bhagavan, for example, space is all of one taste and yet does not obstruct any undertakings. Similarly, the Bhagavan’s teachings of definitive meaning, ranging from the lack of own-being of phenomena to their being naturally in a state of nirvāṇa, are also all of one taste in all Sūtras of interpretable meaning, and yet do not obstruct any undertaking concerned with either the Śrāvaka vehicle, or the Pratyekabuddha vehicle, or the Great Vehicle.”¹⁶

"Excellent!" the Bhagavan replied to the Bodhisattva Paramārthasamudgata. "Paramārthasamudgata, that is good, good! Paramārthasamudgata, having the thought of the Tathāgata, you understand this explanation.

"Your good illustrations of the meaning, [analogies] such as dried ginger, the background of a painting, adding butter, and space, are accurate, Paramārthasamudgata. The [teaching] is not other than this. Therefore it should be apprehended in just this way."

Then the Bodhisattva Paramārthasamudgata said to the Bhagavan: "Initially, in the Vārāṇasī area, in the Deer Park called Sages' Teaching, the Bhagavan taught the aspects of the four truths of the Āryas for those who were genuinely engaged in the [Śrāvaka] vehicle. The wheel of doctrine you turned at first is wondrous. Similar doctrines had not been promulgated before in the world by gods or humans. However, this wheel of doctrine that the Bhagavan turned is surpassable, provides an opportunity [for refutation], is of interpretable meaning, and serves as a basis for dispute.¹⁷

"Then the Bhagavan turned a second wheel of doctrine which is more wondrous still for those who are genuinely engaged in the Great Vehicle, because of the aspect of teaching emptiness, beginning with the lack of own-being of phenomena, and beginning with their absence of production, absence of cessation, quiescence from the start, and being

naturally in a state of nirvāṇa. However, this wheel of doctrine that the Bhagavan turned is surpassable, provides an opportunity [for refutation], is of interpretable meaning, and serves as a basis for dispute.

“Then the Bhagavan turned a third wheel of doctrine, possessing good differentiations, and exceedingly wondrous, for those genuinely engaged in all vehicles, beginning with the lack of own-being of phenomena, and beginning with their absence of production, absence of cessation, quiescence from the start, and being naturally in a state of nirvāṇa. Moreover, that wheel of doctrine turned by the Bhagavan is unsurpassable, does not provide an opportunity [for refutation], is of definitive meaning, and does not serve as a basis for dispute.

“Bhagavan, when sons or daughters of good lineage hear the Bhagavan’s teachings of definitive meaning, from [the teachings] of the lack of own-being of phenomena up to [the teachings] of [phenomena] being naturally in a state of nirvāṇa, they develop conviction in them and write them down. Having transcribed them, they also memorize them, read them, venerate them, propagate them, receive their oral transmission, recite them to others, and reflect and apply themselves to the types of meditative cultivation. How much merit will they generate?”

The Bhagavan replied to the Bodhisattva Paramārtha-samudgata: “Paramārthasamudgata, those sons or daughters

of good lineage will generate immeasurable, incalculable merit. It is not easy to give examples of that [merit], but I will explain it to you briefly.

“Paramārthasamudgata, for example, if one compares the particles of earth on the tip of a fingernail to all the particles of earth in the earth, they do not approach even a hundredth part. They do not approach even a thousandth part, [or] even a one-hundred-thousandth part. They do not approach any number, any part, any approximation, any comparison. If one compares the water in a cow’s hoofprint to the water of the four great oceans, it does not approach even a hundredth part. It does not approach any comparison.

“Paramārthasamudgata, similarly, I have described the merit [generated] by people who develop conviction in Sūtras of interpretable meaning up to those who apply themselves to the types of meditative cultivation. If one compares this merit to the merit [generated] by people who are established in teachings of definitive meaning through conviction up to those who are established [in them] through applying themselves to the types of meditative cultivation, that merit does not approach even a hundredth part. It does not approach any comparison.”

The Bodhisattva Paramārthasamudgata asked the Bhagavan: “Bhagavan, what is the name of this form of Dharma discourse that explains your thought? How should it be apprehended?”

The Bhagavan replied: "Paramārthasamudgata, this is the teaching of the ultimate, the definitive meaning. Apprehend it as 'the teaching of the ultimate, the definitive meaning'."

When this teaching of the ultimate, the definitive meaning, was explained, six hundred thousand beings generated the aspiration toward unsurpassed, complete, and perfect enlightenment. Three hundred Śrāvakas purified the Dharma eye that is free from dust and stainless with respect to the Dharma. One hundred and fifty thousand Śrāvakas liberated their minds from contamination, becoming free from attachment. Seventy-five thousand Bodhisattvas attained the forbearance of the doctrine of non-production.

This completes the seventh chapter of the Bodhisattva Paramārthasamudgata.





Homage to the Mahābodhisattva Maitreya



ཁྱམས་པའི་ལུ་སྟོན་བརྒྱུད་པ།

The Questions of
Maitreya

Chapter Eight

Then the Bodhisattva Maitreya¹ asked the Bhagavan: "Bhagavan, abiding in what and depending upon what do Bodhisattvas in the Great Vehicle cultivate śamatha and vipaśyanā?"²

The Bhagavan replied: "Maitreya, abiding in and depending upon an unwavering resolution to expound doctrinal teachings and to become unsurpassably, perfectly enlightened, [Bodhisattvas cultivate śamatha and vipaśyanā]."³

"The Bhagavan has taught that four things are objects of observation of śamatha and vipaśyanā:⁴ conceptual images, non-conceptual images, the limits of phenomena, and accomplishment of the purpose.⁵ Bhagavan, how many of these are objects of observation of śamatha?"

[The Bhagavan] replied: "One: non-conceptual images."

"How many are objects of observation of vipaśyanā?"

[The Bhagavan] replied: "Only one: conceptual images."

"How many are objects of observation of both?"

[The Bhagavan] replied: "There are two: the limits of phenomena and accomplishment of the purpose."

"Bhagavan, abiding in and depending upon these four objects of observation of śamatha and vipaśyanā, how do Bodhisattvas seek śamatha and become skilled in vipaśyanā?"

“Maitreya, I have set forth these [twelve forms of] doctrinal teachings to Bodhisattvas: Sūtras, discourses in prose and verse, prophetic discourses, verses, purposeful statements, specific teachings, narratives, historical discourses, stories of [the Buddha’s] former lives, extensive discourses, discourses on miraculous phenomena, and discourses that delineate [topics of specific knowledge]. Bodhisattvas hear well, apprehend well, repeat well, analyze well with their minds, and through insight, fully realize these [teachings].

“Then, remaining in seclusion, having genuinely settled [their minds] inwardly, they mentally attend to those doctrines just as they have contemplated them.⁶ With continuous inner attention, they mentally attend to that mind which is mentally contemplated by any mind. The physical and mental pliancy that arises through engaging [in this practice] in this way and continuing in this [practice] is ‘śamatha’. This is how Bodhisattvas seek śamatha.

“Having obtained physical and mental pliancy,⁷ they abide in only that. Having abandoned [certain] aspects of the mind,⁸ they analyze and inwardly consider those very doctrines in the way they have been contemplated as images that are the focus of samādhi. The differentiation, thorough differentiation, thorough investigation, thorough analysis, forbearance, interest, discrimination, view, and investigation of the objects that are known with respect to images that are the focus of

such samādhi is 'vipaśyanā'.⁹ This is how Bodhisattvas become skilled in vipaśyanā."

"Bhagavan, prior to attaining physical and mental pliancy, when a Bodhisattva inwardly attends to the mind observing the mind, what is this mental activity called?"

"Maitreya, this is not śamatha. Know that it resembles intensified interest concordant with śamatha."

"Bhagavan, prior to attaining physical and mental pliancy, when a Bodhisattva inwardly attends to those doctrines just as they have been contemplated as images that are the focus of samādhi, what is this mental activity called?"

"Maitreya, this is not vipaśyanā. Know that it resembles intensified interest concordant with vipaśyanā."

"Bhagavan, are the path of śamatha and the path of vipaśyanā 'different' or 'not different'?"

The Bhagavan replied: "Maitreya, although they are not different, they are also not the same. Why are they not different? Because [śamatha] observes the mind, which is [also] the object of observation of vipaśyanā. Why are they not the same? Because [vipaśyanā] observes a conceptual image."

"Bhagavan, what is the image, the focus of samādhi which perceives [an image]?¹⁰ Is it 'different from the mind' or is it 'not different'?"

"Maitreya, it is 'not different'. Why is it not different? Because that image is simply cognition-only."¹¹ Maitreya, I have explained that consciousness is fully distinguished by [the fact that its] object of observation is cognition-only."

"Bhagavan, if that image, the focus of samādhi, is not different from the physical mind, how does the mind itself investigate the mind itself?"¹²

The Bhagavan replied: "Maitreya, although no phenomenon apprehends any other phenomenon, nevertheless, the mind that is generated in that way appears in that way. Maitreya, for instance, based on form, form itself is seen in a perfectly clear round mirror, but one thinks, 'I see an image'. The form and the appearance of the image appear as different factualities. Likewise, the mind that is generated in that way and the focus of samādhi known as the 'image' also appear to be separate factualities."

"Bhagavan, are the appearances of the forms of sentient beings and so forth, which abide in the nature of images of the mind, 'not different' from the mind?"

The Bhagavan replied: "Maitreya, they are 'not different'. However, because childish beings with distorted understanding do not recognize these images as cognition-only, just as they are in reality, they misconstrue them."¹³

"Bhagavan, at what point do those Bodhisattvas solely cultivate [the practice of] vipaśyanā?"

The Bhagavan replied: "When they attend to mental signs with continuous mental attention."

"At what point do they solely cultivate śamatha?"

The Bhagavan replied: "When they attend to the uninterrupted mind with continuous mental attention."

"At what point, having combined the two, śamatha and vipaśyanā, do they unite them?"

The Bhagavan replied: "When they mentally attend to the one-pointed mind."

"Bhagavan, what are mental signs?"

"Maitreya, they are the conceptual images that are the focus of samādhi, the objects of observation of vipaśyanā."

"What is an uninterrupted mind?"

"Maitreya, it is a mind that observes the image, the object of observation of śamatha."

"What is the one-pointed mind?"

"It is the realization that: 'This image which is the focus of samādhi is cognition-only.' Having realized that, it is mental attention to suchness."¹⁴

"Bhagavan, how many kinds of vipaśyanā are there?"

"Maitreya, there are three kinds: that arisen from signs, that arisen from examination, and that arisen from individual investigation. What is [vipaśyanā] arisen from signs? It is vipaśyanā that mentally attends to just a conceptual image, the

focus of samādhi. What is that arisen from examination? It is vipaśyanā that mentally attends [to its object] in order to understand well through wisdom just those phenomena that were not well understood with respect to this or that [image]. What is that arisen from individual investigation? It is vipaśyanā that mentally attends [to its object] in order to contact great happiness through liberation regarding phenomena that have been understood well through wisdom with respect to this or that [image].”

“How many kinds of śamatha are there?”

The Bhagavan replied: “Since [śamatha] engages an uninterrupted mind, it is also said to be of three kinds.¹⁵ Alternately, Maitreya, śamatha is of eight kinds: the first concentration, the second, third, and fourth concentrations, the sphere of limitless space, the sphere of limitless consciousness, the sphere of nothingness, and the sphere without [coarse] discriminations but not without [subtle] discriminations. Alternately, there are four kinds: immeasurable love, immeasurable compassion, immeasurable joy, and immeasurable equanimity.”

“Bhagavan, if ‘śamatha and vipaśyanā dwell on doctrines’ and also ‘do not dwell on doctrines’, what is dwelling on doctrines? What is not dwelling on doctrines?”

“Maitreya, śamatha and vipaśyanā that relate to meaning—through engagement with the signs of the doctrine¹⁶ in accord with how they have been apprehended and contemplated—dwell on doctrines.

“*Śamatha* and *vipaśyanā* that relate to meaning by relying on instructions and teachings from others, without attending to doctrines in accord with how they have been apprehended and contemplated—[focusing] on discolored or putrefying corpses or on what is concordant with that, or on the impermanence of compounded phenomena, or on suffering, or on the selflessness of all phenomena, or on the peace of *nirvāṇa*, or on what is concordant with that—are *śamatha* and *vipaśyanā* that do not dwell on doctrines.

“*Maitreya*, I designate *Bodhisattvas* who follow the teaching, depending upon *śamatha* and *vipaśyanā* that dwell on doctrines, as having sharp faculties. I designate those who follow with faith, depending upon [*śamatha* and *vipaśyanā*] that do not dwell on doctrines, as having dull faculties.”

“*Bhagavan*, if ‘*śamatha* and *vipaśyanā* observe unintegrated doctrines’ and also ‘observe integrated doctrines’, what is observation of unintegrated doctrines? What is observation of integrated doctrines?”¹⁷

“*Maitreya*, if a *Bodhisattva* cultivates *śamatha* and *vipaśyanā* that observe particular doctrines of the *Sūtras* and so forth from among the doctrines, just as [those particular doctrines] have been apprehended and contemplated, this is the *śamatha* and *vipaśyanā* that observe unintegrated doctrines. But if [a *Bodhisattva*] gathers these doctrines from the *Sūtras* and so forth together, groups them comprehensively, draws them into an aggregated unit, and takes to mind the thought—

'All these doctrines flow into suchness, descend into suchness, have descended into suchness; flow into enlightenment, descend into enlightenment, have descended into enlightenment; flow into nirvāṇa, descend into nirvāṇa, have descended into nirvāṇa; flow into transformation of the basis, descend into transformation of the basis, have descended into transformation of the basis.¹⁸ All these doctrines have been expressed through the manifest expression of innumerable and measureless virtuous doctrines'—this is śamatha and vipaśyanā that observe integrated doctrines."

"Bhagavan, if 'śamatha and vipaśyanā observe somewhat integrated doctrines', and also 'observe highly integrated doctrines', and also 'observe immeasurably integrated doctrines': What is observation of somewhat integrated doctrines? What is observation of highly integrated doctrines? What is observation of immeasurably integrated doctrines?"¹⁹

"Maitreya, know that śamatha and vipaśyanā mentally attending to [doctrines]—from the Sūtra section up to the extensive discourses, the discourses on miraculous phenomena, and the discourses that delineate—as one unit are the observation of somewhat integrated doctrines. Know that [śamatha and vipaśyanā] mentally attending to the Sūtras and so forth, as many as have been collectively apprehended and contemplated, are the observation of highly integrated doctrines. Understand that [śamatha and vipaśyanā] mentally attending comprehensively to all the immeasurable Dharma teachings

of the Tathāgata, to [all] the immeasurable words and letters of the doctrine, and to immeasurable ever-increasing wisdom and inspiration are the observation of immeasurably integrated doctrines."

"Bhagavan, how is it that Bodhisattvas attain śamatha and vipaśyanā that observe integrated doctrines?"

"Maitreya, know that they attain them through five causes: In each moment of mental attention they destroy all of the bases of errant tendencies. Having abandoned various motivational factors, they attain joy in the joyousness of the Dharma. They correctly understand that the appearances of the Dharma are measureless in the ten directions and that their aspects are unlimited. They are endowed with accomplishment of the purpose, and the non-imaginary signs that are partially concordant with purification arise in them. In order to attain, perfect, and accomplish the Dharmakāya, they take hold of the causes of increasing goodness, the greatest auspiciousness."

"Bhagavan, on what [stage] are śamatha and vipaśyanā that observe integrated doctrines realized, and on what [stage] are they understood to be attained?"

The Bhagavan replied: "Maitreya, know that having been realized on the first stage, the Very Joyous, they are attained on the third stage, the Luminous. Nevertheless, Maitreya, even beginning Bodhisattvas should not neglect training in them and mentally attending to them."

"Bhagavan, at what point are śamatha and vipaśyanā conceptual and analytical samādhi? At what point do they become non-conceptual and only analytical? At what point do they become non-conceptual and non-analytical?"²⁰

"Maitreya, analytical śamatha and vipaśyanā that experience the clear and coarse signs of doctrines that are analyzed in just the way that they have been apprehended and investigated are samādhis that are conceptual and analytical.²¹ The śamatha and vipaśyanā that are not analytical in experiencing the clear and coarse signs of these very [doctrines], but are analytical in experiencing a mere subtle mindfulness of their approximate appearances, are a non-conceptual and solely analytical samādhi. Śamatha and vipaśyanā that are completely analytical due to mentally attending to the experience of doctrines spontaneously and totally with respect to all their signs are a non-conceptual and non-analytical samādhi.

"Moreover, Maitreya, śamatha and vipaśyanā that arise from investigation are a conceptual and analytical samādhi. Śamatha and vipaśyanā that arise from individual realization are a non-conceptual and solely analytical samādhi. [Śamatha and vipaśyanā] that observe integrated doctrines are a non-conceptual, non-analytical samādhi."

"Bhagavan, what is the cause of śamatha? What is the cause of thorough stabilization? What is the cause of equanimity?"

"Maitreya, when the mind is excited, or when one fears that it will become excited, mental attention to sobering phenomena and to the uninterrupted mind is 'the cause of *śamatha*'.²²

"Maitreya, when the mind becomes dull, or when one fears that it will become dull, mental attention to pleasant phenomena and to the characteristics of the mind is 'the cause of thorough stabilization'.

"Maitreya, when those following a path that is singly dedicated to *śamatha*, or that is singly dedicated to *vipaśyanā*, or that is a union of those two, naturally engage their minds in a [state] unafflicted by the two afflictions [of excitement and dullness], this spontaneous mental attention is 'the cause of equanimity'."

"Bhagavan, when Bodhisattvas cultivating *śamatha* and *vipaśyanā* comprehend doctrine and objects, how do they comprehend doctrine? How do they comprehend objects?"²³

"Maitreya, they comprehend doctrine through five aspects: names, words, letters, individuality, and integration. What are names? They are what is attributed to afflicted or purified phenomena as the designation for entities or particulars. What are words? They are what depends upon collections of those very names which are associated through conventional designations of objects as being afflicted or pure. What are letters? They are the units that are the bases

of these two. What is comprehended through their 'individuality'? It is comprehension due to mental attention that observes unintegrated [doctrines]. What is comprehended through their 'integration'? It is comprehension due to mental attention that observes integrated [doctrines]. All of these are collectively known as 'comprehension of doctrine'. That is how [Bodhisattvas] comprehend doctrine.

"Bodhisattvas comprehend objects through these ten aspects: through what exists relatively; through what exists in fact; through apprehending objects; through apprehended objects; through objects that are abodes; through objects that are resources; through mistaken objects; through non-mistaken objects; through afflicted objects; and through purified objects.

"Maitreya, the totality of all the types of divisions among afflicted or purified phenomena is 'that which exists relatively'. This [totality] includes the fivefold enumeration of the aggregates, the sixfold enumeration of the internal sense spheres, the sixfold enumeration of the external sense spheres, and so forth.

"Maitreya, the suchness of those same afflicted and purified phenomena is 'that which exists in fact'. Furthermore, [suchness] has seven aspects: the 'suchness of arising' is the beginninglessness and endlessness of compounded phenomena; the 'suchness of character' is the selflessness of persons

and the selflessness of phenomena in all phenomena; the 'suchness of cognition' [understands] that compounded phenomena are cognition-only; the 'suchness of abiding' is what I taught as the truth of suffering; the 'suchness of wrong establishment' is what I taught as the truth of the origin of suffering; the 'suchness of purification' is what I taught as the truth of the cessation of suffering; and the 'suchness of right establishment' is what I taught as the truth of the path.

"Maitreya, due to the suchness of arising, the suchness of abiding, and the suchness of wrong establishment, all sentient beings are similar and equal.

"Maitreya, due to the suchness of character and the suchness of cognition, all phenomena are similar and equal.

"Maitreya, due to the suchness of purification, all enlightenments—the enlightenment of Śrāvakas, the enlightenment of Pratyekabuddhas, and supreme, perfect enlightenment—are similar and equal.

"Maitreya, due to the suchness of right establishment, wisdom conjoined with śamatha and vipaśyanā, that observes all that one hears as integrated doctrine, is similar and equal.

"Maitreya, 'apprehending objects' are the phenomena of the five physical sense spheres, mind, thought, consciousness, and mental factors.

"Maitreya, 'apprehended objects' are the six external sense spheres. Moreover, Maitreya, apprehending objects are also apprehended objects.

"Maitreya, 'objects that are abodes' are the worldly realms: realms of sentient beings that appear in various places. These include: a village, one hundred villages, one thousand of these, or one hundred thousand of these; a region, one hundred of these, or one hundred thousand of these; a Jambudvīpa,²⁴ one hundred of these, one thousand of these, or one hundred thousand of these; the four great continents, one hundred of these, one thousand of these, or one hundred thousand of these; a universe of a thousand worlds, one hundred of these, one thousand of these, or one hundred thousand of these; a medium-sized universe of two thousand worlds, one hundred of these, one thousand of these, or one hundred thousand of these; a great universe of three thousand worlds, one hundred of these, one thousand of these, one hundred thousand of these, ten million of these, one hundred times ten million of these, one thousand times ten million of these, one hundred thousand times ten million of these, an incalculable number of these, one hundred times an incalculable number of these, one thousand times an incalculable number of these, one hundred thousand times an incalculable number of these, or a number equal to however many atomic particles there are in the dust motes in a hundred thousand times an incalculable number of the great trichiliocosms of the immeasurable, incalculable universes of the ten directions.

"Maitreya, I have taught that 'objects that are resources' are the possessions and assets that sentient beings enjoy.²⁵

"Maitreya, 'mistaken objects' are mistaken discriminations, mistaken thoughts, and mistaken views, such as [conceiving] the impermanent as being permanent with respect to those objects that are apprehenders and so forth; mistaken discriminations, mistaken thoughts, and mistaken views, such as [conceiving] suffering as bliss, the impure as pure, or the selfless as having a self.

"Maitreya, know that 'non-mistaken objects' are the opposite of those and that they are antidotes to them.

"Maitreya, there are three kinds of 'afflicted objects': afflictions that are the afflictions of the three realms, afflictions of actions, and afflictions of birth.

"Maitreya, 'purified objects' are whatever phenomena are in harmony with enlightenment due to separating one from those three types of affliction.

"Maitreya, know that all objects are encompassed by these ten aspects.

"Maitreya, Bodhisattvas also comprehend objects through five aspects. What are these five aspects of objects? They are: knowable things, knowable meanings, knowledge, obtaining the fruit of knowledge, and full awareness of that.

"Maitreya, you should view 'knowable things' as being all objects of knowledge. This includes what is known as 'the

aggregates', 'the internal sense spheres', 'the external sense spheres', and the like.

"Maitreya, 'knowable meanings' are correctly known by way of their various aspects. They include: the conventional and the ultimate, faults and good qualities, conditions, time, the characteristics of production, abiding, and disintegration, sickness and so forth; suffering and the source of suffering and so forth; suchness, the reality limit,²⁶ the Dharmadhātu, condensed [discourses], extensive [discourses], certain prophecies, differentiation, scriptural questions and answers, pronouncements, secrets, and [scriptural] teachings. Know that things concordant with these are knowable meanings.²⁷

"Maitreya, 'knowledge' refers to phenomena that are in harmony with enlightenment, including both [the ultimate and the conventional]. These [phenomena in harmony with enlightenment] include: the mindful establishments, the correct abandonings, and so forth.

"Maitreya, 'obtaining the fruit of knowledge' is: disciplining desire, anger, and bewilderment; entirely abandoning desire, anger, and bewilderment; [attaining] the fruits of virtuous application; and those common and uncommon, mundane and supramundane qualities of Śrāvakas and Tathāgatas that I have taught and that should be actualized.

"Maitreya, 'full awareness' is knowledge liberated from those very things that have been actualized, and extensively

and consummately teaching other beings. Maitreya, know that all objects are encompassed by these five objects.

“Maitreya, Bodhisattvas also comprehend objects through four aspects. What are the four aspects of objects? They are: appropriated objects of mind, objects of experience, objects of cognition, and objects of affliction and purification. Know, Maitreya, that all objects are also encompassed by these four aspects of objects.

“Maitreya, Bodhisattvas also comprehend objects through three aspects. What are the three aspects of objects? They are: objects that are words, objects that are meanings, and objects that are realms.

“Maitreya, ‘objects that are words’ should be viewed as being collections of names and so forth.

“Maitreya, know that ‘objects that are meanings’ have ten aspects: the character of reality; the character of knowledge; the character of abandonment; the character of actualization; the character of cultivation; the character which differentiates the aspects of those very characters of reality and so forth; the character of basis and what relates to a basis; the character of phenomena that interrupt knowledge and so forth; the character of concordant phenomena; and the character of the harmfulness of ignorance and the like and the benefits of knowledge and the like.

"Maitreya, 'objects that are realms' are the five realms: worldly realms, the realm of sentient beings, the realm of qualities, the realm of discipline, and the realm of methods of discipline.²⁸

"Maitreya, know that all objects are also encompassed by these three aspects."

"Bhagavan, what are the differences between comprehending objects through wisdom arisen from listening, comprehending objects through wisdom arisen from reflection, and, Bhagavan, comprehending objects through wisdom arisen from cultivating *śamatha* and *vipaśyanā*?"

The Bhagavan replied: "Maitreya, through wisdom arisen from listening, Bodhisattvas abide in words; they take them literally, do not grasp their intent, and do not actualize them. They are concordant with liberation and they comprehend objects that are not liberative.²⁹

"Maitreya, through wisdom arisen from reflection, they still adhere to words, but they do not take them literally; they grasp their intent and actualize them. They are very concordant with liberation and they comprehend objects that are not liberative.

"Maitreya, through wisdom that arises from meditation, Bodhisattvas adhere to words and do not adhere to words; they take them literally and grasp their intent; they actualize

them through the images that are the focus of samādhi that accord with knowable things. They are completely concordant with liberation and they also comprehend objects that are liberative. Maitreya, these are the differences among them."

"Bhagavan, what is the knowledge of Bodhisattvas cultivating śamatha and vipaśyanā that comprehends doctrine and that comprehends objects? What is [their] insight?"

"Maitreya, although I teach knowledge and insight in many ways, I will explain them concisely: The wisdom of śamatha and vipaśyanā that observes integrated doctrines is knowledge. The wisdom of śamatha and vipaśyanā that observes unintegrated doctrines is insight."

"Bhagavan, through cultivating śamatha and vipaśyanā, how do Bodhisattvas remove which signs with what [kind of] mental attention?"

"Maitreya, through mental attention to suchness they remove the signs of doctrines and the signs of objects. With respect to names, by not observing the nature of names, and also by not perceiving as real the signs of their abiding, they eliminate [signs].

"Just as it is with respect to names, so it is also with respect to all words, letters, and meanings. Maitreya, with respect to [everything] up through realms: By not observing the nature

of realms, and also by not perceiving as real the signs of their abiding, they eliminate [signs]."

"Bhagavan, are the signs of comprehending the object of suchness also eliminated?"

"Maitreya, with respect to comprehending the object of suchness, since one does not observe what is without signs, what is there to eliminate? Maitreya, comprehending the object of suchness overwhelms all signs of doctrines and objects. I do not assert that it is overwhelmed by anything."

"Bhagavan, the Bhagavan has said, 'One cannot examine the signs of one's own face with, for example, a pot of filthy water, a dirty mirror, or an agitated pond; one can with their opposites. Similarly, minds that do not meditate cannot know reality just as it is, whereas those that have meditated can do so.' In this context, what is mental analysis? Of what kind of suchness were you thinking?"

The Bhagavan replied: "Maitreya, [in this context] there are three kinds of mental analysis: mental analysis arisen from listening, mental analysis arisen from reflection, and mental analysis arisen from meditating. I taught this, thinking of the suchness of cognition."

"Bhagavan, how many kinds of signs do you speak of for Bodhisattvas who comprehend doctrines and comprehend objects and are engaged in eliminating signs? By what are these signs eliminated?"

"Maitreya, there are ten kinds, and they are eliminated by emptiness. What are these ten? They are:

"The various signs of syllables and words through which the meaning of doctrine is comprehended. These are eliminated by the emptiness of all phenomena.

"The signs that are a continuum of production, destruction, abiding, and transformation through which the meaning of the suchness of abiding is comprehended are eliminated by the emptiness of character and the emptiness of what is beginningless and endless.

"The signs of discerning true personhood and the signs of thinking 'I am' through which one comprehends the apprehending object are eliminated by the emptiness of the internal and the emptiness of the unobservable.

"The signs of discerning enjoyment through which one comprehends the apprehended object are eliminated by the emptiness of the external.

"The signs of inner happiness and the signs of external allure through which one comprehends the objects that are resources, [such as] the services of men and women and possessions, are eliminated by the emptiness of the external and by the emptiness of self-nature.

"The signs of the immeasurable through which one comprehends the objects that are abodes are eliminated by the emptiness of the great.

"The internal signs of peaceful liberation dependent upon [comprehending] formlessness are eliminated by the emptiness of compounded phenomena.

"The signs of the selflessness of persons, the signs of the selflessness of phenomena, the signs of cognition-only, and the signs of the ultimate through which one comprehends the object of the suchness of character are eliminated by the emptiness of what has passed beyond the extremes, by the emptiness of non-things, by the emptiness of the own-being of non-things, and by the emptiness of the ultimate.

"The signs of the uncompounded and the signs of the immutable through which one comprehends the object of pure suchness are eliminated by the emptiness of uncompounded phenomena and the emptiness of inclusiveness.

"The signs of emptiness through which one takes to mind the very emptiness that is an antidote to these signs are eliminated by the emptiness of emptiness."³⁰

"Bhagavan, when [Bodhisattvas] eliminate the ten kinds of signs, what are the signs that they eliminate? From what signs of bondage are they liberated?"

"Maitreya, eliminating the sign of the image, the focus of samādhi, one is liberated from the signs that are the signs of the afflictions; these [signs] are also eliminated."³¹ Maitreya, know that the emptinesses are, in actuality, antidotes to the signs. Each [emptiness] is also an antidote to any of the signs.

"Maitreya, for example, although the afflictions are not established, due to proximity or close proximity with conditions, from ignorance up to old age and death, in actuality, compounded phenomena are described as being established. You should also discern [these emptinesses] in just this way."

"Bhagavan, what do Bodhisattvas realize in the Mahāyāna that merges the signs of unchanging emptiness without degenerating into arrogance about the character of emptiness?"

Then the Bhagavan replied to the Bodhisattva Maitreya: "Excellent! Maitreya, you ask the Tathāgata about this issue so that Bodhisattvas will not fall away from emptiness. This is very good! Why? Maitreya, Bodhisattvas who do not fall away from emptiness also do not fall away from all of the Mahāyāna. Therefore, Maitreya, listen well and I will concisely explain to you the character of emptiness.

"Maitreya, the other-dependent character and the thoroughly established character are observed in all aspects to be a character free from the imputational character which is either afflicted or purified. This [character] is 'that which has been taught in the Mahāyāna as the character of emptiness'."

"Bhagavan, how many kinds of samādhis of śamatha and vipaśyanā are included [in this teaching]?"

The Bhagavan replied: "Know that all of the many kinds of samādhis of Śrāvakas, Bodhisattvas, and Tathāgatas that I have taught are included."

"Bhagavan, from what causes do śamatha and vipaśyanā arise?"

"Maitreya, they arise from the cause of pure moral practice, and they arise from the cause of the pure view which comes from listening and reflecting."

"Bhagavan, will you explain the results of these?"

"Maitreya, pure mind is the result. Pure wisdom is the result. Moreover, Maitreya, know that all mundane and supra-mundane virtuous qualities of Śrāvakas, or of Bodhisattvas, or of Tathāgatas are the result of śamatha and vipaśyanā."

"Bhagavan, what are the functions of śamatha and vipaśyanā?"

"Maitreya, they liberate from the two bonds, the bonds of signs and the bonds of errant tendencies."

"Bhagavan, from among the five kinds of obstacles spoken of by the Bhagavan, which are obstacles to śamatha? Which are obstacles to vipaśyanā? Which are obstacles to both?"

"Maitreya, know that views [that overvalue] the body and resources are obstacles to śamatha.³² Not obtaining the instructions of the Āryas in accordance with one's wishes is an obstacle to vipaśyanā. Abiding in turmoil and being satisfied

with inferior [attainment] are obstacles to both.³³ Because of the first of these, one does not apply oneself; because of the second, one does not complete the training."

"Bhagavan, from among the five obstructions, which is an obstruction to śamatha? Which is an obstruction to vipaśyanā? Which is an obstruction to both of these?"

"Maitreya, excitement and contrition are obstructions to śamatha. Lethargy, sleep, and doubt are obstructions to vipaśyanā. Fixation on desirable experience and harmful intent are obstructions to both of these."

"Bhagavan, when is the path of śamatha wholly purified?"

"Maitreya, at the point when lethargy and sleep are completely conquered."

"Bhagavan, when is the path of vipaśyanā wholly purified?"

"At the point when excitement and contrition are completely conquered."

"Bhagavan, how many types of mental distractions do Bodhisattvas engaged in śamatha and vipaśyanā discover?"

The Bhagavan replied: "Maitreya, there are five types: the distraction of mental contemplation, external mental distraction, internal mental distraction, the distraction of signs, and the distraction of errant tendencies.

"Maitreya, if Bodhisattvas forsake the mental contemplations of the Mahāyāna and adopt the mental contemplations

of Śrāvakas and Pratyekabuddhas, this is a distraction of mental contemplation.³⁴

“If they let their minds scatter to the five external desirable qualities, or to diversions, signs, conceptuality, afflictions, secondary afflictions, and external objects of observation, this is external mental distraction.³⁵

“If they become afflicted either by laxity due to lethargy, sleep, or relishing the taste of meditative absorption, or by any of the secondary afflictions associated with meditative absorption, this is internal mental distraction.³⁶

“If, depending on external signs, they mentally attend to signs that are the focus of internal samādhis, this is the distraction of signs.

“If, depending on internal mental engagement, they attribute the concept ‘I am’ to arising feelings due to collective errant tendencies, this is the distraction of errant tendencies.”

“Bhagavan, what do śamatha and vipaśyanā counteract, from the first Bodhisattva stage up to the stage of the Tathāgata?”

“Maitreya, on the first stage, śamatha and vipaśyanā counteract the afflictions of bad transmigrations and the afflictions of actions and of birth. On the second stage, they counteract the arising of errors that are very subtle infractions. On the third stage, they counteract attachment to desirable experiences. On the fourth stage, they counteract craving for

meditative absorption and craving for phenomena. On the fifth stage, they counteract exclusively turning away from or moving toward either saṃsāra or nirvāṇa. On the sixth stage, they counteract the arising of manifold signs. On the seventh stage, they counteract the arising of subtle signs. On the eighth stage, they counteract the search for signlessness and not having mastery over signs. On the ninth stage they counteract not having mastery over teaching the doctrine in all its aspects. On the tenth stage, they counteract not attaining perfect comprehension of the Dharmakāya.

“Maitreya, on the stage of the Tathāgata, śamatha and vipaśyanā counteract afflictive obstructions and obstructions to omniscience that are supremely subtle. Through fully conquering those [obstructions], [Tathāgatas] obtain vision and knowledge that is unattached and unobstructed with respect to everything. They abide in the object of observation which is the accomplishment of purpose, the very pure Dharmakāya.”

“Bhagavan, after Bodhisattvas have achieved śamatha and vipaśyanā, how do they completely and perfectly realize unsurpassed enlightenment?”

The Bhagavan replied: “Maitreya, Bodhisattvas, having obtained śamatha and vipaśyanā, begin with the seven types of suchness. With minds absorbed in doctrines in accordance with how they have been heard and contemplated, they inwardly attend to the suchness that is apprehended, well

considered, and well attained. Since they mentally attend to suchness in this way, the mind soon enters great equipoise with regard to any arising of even the most subtle signs. What need be said about the coarse [signs]?

"Maitreya, the very subtle signs are these: signs of mental appropriation; signs of experience; signs of cognition; signs of affliction and purification; internal signs; external signs; signs of both; signs involved in thinking, 'I must work for the sake of all sentient beings'; signs of knowledge; signs of suchness, the [truth] of suffering, [the truth] of the source [of suffering], [the truth] of the cessation [of suffering], and [the truth] of the path; signs of compounded phenomena; signs of uncompounded phenomena; signs of permanence; signs of impermanence; signs that have a nature associated with suffering and change; signs having a nature that is unchangeable; signs unlike the characteristics of compounded phenomena; signs of their own characteristics; signs of universality, as in the context of knowing everything as 'everything'; signs of the selflessness of persons; and signs of the selflessness of phenomena.³⁷ In relationship to their arising, the mind enters into great equipoise.

"Entering into [suchness] in this way and abiding there often, they completely cleanse their minds of occasional obstacles, obstructions, and distractions, producing the seven aspects of knowledge which individually realize the seven

aspects of suchness that are known by oneself individually and internally.³⁸ Such is the [Bodhisattva] path of seeing.

“By attaining this, Bodhisattvas enter into faultless reality. They are born into the lineage of the Tathāgata. They attain the first stage and also experience the benefits of that stage. Because they have previously attained *śamatha* and *vipaśyanā*, they attain the [first] two types of objects of observation: conceptual images and non-conceptual images. By attaining the path of seeing in such a way, they attain the [stage of] observing the limits of phenomena.

“Entering the path of meditation, they progress to higher stages. When they mentally attend to the three types of objects of observation, it is like removing a large nail with a small nail.³⁹ In the same way that a nail draws out a nail, by eliminating internal signs they eliminate all the signs concordant with the afflictions. When they eliminate the signs, they also eliminate the errant tendencies.

“By subduing signs and errant tendencies, [Bodhisattvas] gradually proceed higher and higher on the stages, purifying the mind like gold. They completely and perfectly realize unsurpassed enlightenment and obtain the object of observation which is the accomplishment of the purpose.

“Maitreya, when Bodhisattvas attain *śamatha* and *vipaśyanā* in that way, they completely and perfectly realize unsurpassed enlightenment.”

"How should a Bodhisattva practice in order to manifestly achieve the Bodhisattva's great powers?"⁴⁰

"Maitreya, Bodhisattvas who are skillful⁴¹ with respect to six topics manifestly achieve the Bodhisattva's great powers. These [powers] include skill with respect to the arising of mind, the abiding of mind, the emergence of mind, the increasing of mind, the diminishing of mind, and skill in means.

"At what point do [Bodhisattvas] become skillful with respect to the arising of mind? They are skillful with respect to the arising of mind as it really is when they know the sixteen aspects of the arising of mind. The sixteen aspects of the arising of mind are:

"Cognition that is a foundation and a receptacle, that is the appropriating consciousness."⁴²

"Cognition that has various objects of observation, a conceptual mental consciousness that simultaneously apprehends objects such as form and the like; that simultaneously apprehends [both] the outer and inner object; that in a moment, an instant, or in a short time is simultaneously absorbed in many samādhis; that sees many Buddha fields and many Tathāgatas. [This cognition] is solely a conceptual mental consciousness."⁴³

"Cognition of small observable signs related to the desire realm.

"Cognition of vast observable signs related to the form realm.

"Cognition of limitless observable signs related to the spheres of limitless space and limitless consciousness.

"Cognition of subtle observable signs related to the sphere of nothingness.

"Cognition of final observable signs related to the sphere of neither discrimination nor non-discrimination.

"Cognition of signlessness, which observes the supramundane and cessation.

"That which is involved with suffering is the state of hell beings.

"That which is involved with diverse feelings is enacted in the desire realm.

"That involved with joy is the first and second concentrations.

"That which is involved with bliss is the third concentration.

"That which is involved with neither suffering nor non-suffering, neither bliss nor non-bliss is that which is involved with the fourth concentration up to the sphere of neither discrimination nor non-discrimination.⁴⁴

"That which is involved with affliction is involvement with the afflictions and the secondary afflictions.

"That which is involved with virtue is involvement with faith and so forth.⁴⁵

"That which is involved with the neutral is not involved with either [afflictions or virtues].

"At what point do [Bodhisattvas] become skilled with respect to the [mind's] abiding? This occurs when they know the suchness of cognition just as it is.

"At what point do [Bodhisattvas] become skilled with respect to the [mind's] emergence? This occurs when they

know, just as they are, the two types of bonds, the bonds of signs and the bonds of errant tendencies.⁴⁶ Having thoroughly come to know this, they are skilled in terms of [knowing]: 'This mind emerges from that.'

"At what point do [Bodhisattvas] become skilled with respect to [the mind's] increasing? When the mind that is an antidote to signs and errant tendencies is produced and increases, they are skilled with respect to increasing, [knowing]: 'This is produced and increases.'

"At what point do [Bodhisattvas] become skilled with respect to [the mind's] diminishing? When the mind that is afflicted with signs and errant tendencies discordant with that [skill] diminishes and decreases, they are skilled with respect to diminishing, [knowing]: 'It diminishes and decreases.'

"At what point do [Bodhisattvas] become skilled in means?⁴⁷ This occurs when they meditate on the [eight] liberations, the [eight] spheres of surpassing, and the [ten] spheres of totality. Maitreya, in this way Bodhisattvas have manifestly achieved, will manifestly achieve, and are manifestly achieving the Bodhisattva's great powers."

"Bhagavan, the Bhagavan has said, 'In the sphere of nirvāṇa without a remainder of aggregates, all feelings completely cease.' Bhagavan, what are those valid feelings [that cease]?"

"Maitreya, in brief, two kinds of feelings cease: awareness of the errant tendencies that are abodes and awareness of objects that are the fruits of those [tendencies].⁴⁸ Awareness

of the errant tendencies that are abodes should be known as being of four kinds: awareness of errant tendencies of the form realm, awareness of errant tendencies of the formless realm, awareness of errant tendencies that have come to fruition, and awareness of errant tendencies that have not come to fruition.⁴⁹ Those that have come to fruition are whatever now exists; those that have not come to fruition are whatever will serve as causes in the future.

“Know that awareness of objects is also of four kinds: awareness of abodes, awareness of property, awareness of resources, and awareness of reliances. Moreover, [awareness of objects] occurs in the sphere of nirvāṇa that has a remainder of the aggregates. Although this [category of awareness of objects] includes awareness of what has not come to fruition, that which is discordant with the experiences of feelings that arise from contact has not completely ceased. Thus one experiences affiliated [feelings]. With the awareness of that which has come to fruition, the two kinds of feelings completely cease: Although this includes awareness, one experiences just those feelings that arise from contact. When one passes beyond sorrow altogether in the sphere of nirvāṇa that is without a remainder of the aggregates, even that ceases. Therefore, it is said that, ‘All feelings cease in the sphere of nirvāṇa that is without a remainder of the aggregates.’”⁵⁰

Having said this, the Bhagavan said to Bodhisattva Maitreya, “Maitreya, you question the Tathāgata about yoga with skill and good ascertainment beginning with the most complete

and pure path of yoga. This is excellent and good! I also teach this path of yoga completely and flawlessly. All those who have become perfect Buddhas in the past or will become Buddhas in the future have also taught or will teach in this way. It is fitting that sons and daughters of good lineage strive for this."

Then the Bhagavan spoke these verses:

"Whatever doctrines are designated and posited are for the great purpose of diligence in yoga.

Those who rely on these doctrines and work at this yoga will attain enlightenment.

"Those who, seeking flaws, dispute these words and study all doctrines seeking liberation are, Maitreya, as far from this yoga as the sky is distant from the earth.

"Those wise ones who benefit sentient beings do not seek rewards when striving to aid beings. Those who hope for a reward will not attain supreme joy free from materialistic concerns.

"Those who, with desire, give Dharma instructions, have renounced desire, but still cling to it. These deluded ones obtain the precious, priceless Dharma, but wander in destitution.

"Therefore, vigorously abandon disputation, worldly commotion, and conceptual elaboration. In order to liberate worldly beings, including gods, make great effort in this yoga."

Then the Bodhisattva Maitreya asked the Bhagavan: "Bhagavan, what is the name of this form of Dharma discourse that explains your thought? How should it be apprehended?"

The Bhagavan replied: "Maitreya, this is the teaching of the definitive meaning of yoga. Apprehend it as 'the teaching of the definitive meaning of yoga'."

When this teaching of the definitive meaning of yoga was explained, six hundred thousand living beings generated the aspiration toward completely perfect and unsurpassed enlightenment. Three hundred thousand Śrāvakas purified the Dharma eye that is free from dust and stainless with respect to the Dharma. One hundred and fifty thousand Śrāvakas liberated their minds from contamination such that they would not take rebirth. Seventy-five thousand Bodhisattvas attained the mental contemplation of the great yoga.

This completes the eighth chapter of Maitreya.





Homage to the Mahābodhisattva Avalokiteśvara



The Questions of Avalokiteśvara

Chapter Nine

Then Bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara¹ asked the Bhagavan: "Bhagavan, since there are ten Bodhisattva stages—the Very Joyous, the Stainless, the Luminous, the Radiant, the Unconquerable, the Manifest, the Gone Afar, the Immovable, the Good Intelligence, and the Cloud of Dharma, and the eleventh stage of a Buddha—of how many purities and how many limbs are these stages comprised?"

The Bhagavan replied: "Avalokiteśvara, know that these [stages] are comprised of four purities and eleven limbs. Avalokiteśvara, know that pure thought comprises the first stage; pure surpassing ethics comprises the second stage; pure surpassing intention comprises the third stage; and pure surpassing wisdom comprises the progressively higher [stages] ranging from the fourth stage up to the Buddha stage. These four purities comprise these [stages].²

"What are the eleven limbs?"³ Avalokiteśvara, by acting patiently to finely cultivate conviction in the ten aspects of doctrinal practices,⁴ Bodhisattvas on the stage of engagement through conviction pass completely beyond that stage and enter the faultless reality of the Bodhisattva.⁵

"Although the [first stage] is achieved by this [first] limb, due to inability to employ introspection into the source of the errors that are subtle infractions, the [second stage] is not achieved by the [first] limb. Through striving to achieve the [second] limb, the [second stage] will also be attained.⁶

"Although the [second stage] is achieved by the [second] limb, due to inability to enter fully into absorption in worldly samādhis, or to retain fully what is heard, the [third stage] is not achieved by the [second] limb.⁷ Through striving to achieve the [third] limb, the [third stage] will also be attained.

"Although the [third stage] is achieved by the [third] limb, due to inability to always abide in doctrines concordant with enlightenment just as they have been attained, and inability to make the mind dispassionate with respect to craving for meditative absorption and for phenomena, the [fourth stage] is not achieved by the [third] limb. Through striving to achieve the [fourth] limb, the [fourth stage] will also be attained.⁸

"Although the [fourth stage] is achieved by the [fourth] limb, and [those Bodhisattvas] have analyzed the truths and have completely dispassionate mental attention which neither exclusively turns away from nor moves toward saṃsāra or nirvāṇa, because they are not able to cultivate doctrines that are concordant with enlightenment which are fully conjoined with method, the [fifth stage] is not achieved by the [fourth] limb. Through striving to achieve the [fifth] limb, the [fifth stage] will also be attained.⁹

"Although the [fifth stage] is achieved by the [fifth] limb, and [those Bodhisattvas] have realized as they really are the workings of the compounded, due to inability to always abide in mental attention to renunciation and signlessness, the [sixth

stage] is not achieved by the [fifth] limb. Through striving to achieve the [sixth] limb, the [sixth stage] will also be attained.¹⁰

“Although the [sixth stage] is achieved by the [sixth] limb, due to inability to abide in mental attention to signlessness continuously and uninterruptedly, the [seventh stage] is not achieved by the [sixth] limb. Through striving to achieve the [seventh] limb, the [seventh stage] will also be attained.¹¹

“Although the [seventh stage] is achieved by the [seventh] limb, due to inability to make dispassionate efforts to abide in signlessness and inability to attain mastery over signs, the [eighth stage] is not achieved by the [seventh] limb. Through striving to achieve the [eighth] limb, the [eighth stage] will also be attained.¹²

“Although the [eighth stage] is achieved by the [eighth] limb, due to inability to also attain mastery in teaching the doctrine in all its aspects by means of enumerations, characteristics, etymologies, and divisions, the [ninth stage] is not achieved by the [eighth] limb. Through striving to achieve the [ninth] limb, the [ninth stage] will also be attained.¹³

“Although the [ninth stage] is achieved by the [ninth] limb, because of inability to attain comprehension of the perfect Dharmakāya, the [tenth stage] is not achieved by the [ninth] limb. Through striving to complete the [tenth] limb, the [tenth stage] will also be attained.¹⁴

"Although the [tenth stage] is achieved by the [tenth] limb, due to inability to attain knowledge and insight that is unattached and unimpeded with respect to all objects of knowledge, the [Buddha stage] is not achieved by the [tenth] limb. Through striving to achieve the [eleventh] limb, the [Buddha stage] will also be attained. The [Buddha stage] is achieved by the [eleventh] limb.¹⁵ Through achieving the [Buddha stage] by the [eleventh] limb, all limbs are achieved. Avalokiteśvara, know that the [eleven stages] are comprised of these eleven limbs."

"Bhagavan, why is the first stage called the 'Very Joyous'? Why are the stages up to the Buddha stage given names [such as] the 'Buddha stage'?"

"The first stage is called the 'Very Joyous' because, through attaining a mind that is of supreme worth, that is exceptional, and that transcends the world, one becomes supremely joyous and extensively joyous. The second stage is called the 'Stainless' because one is free from all stains that are subtle infractions or faulty ethics. The third stage is called the 'Luminous' because it is a state of limitless illuminating knowledge of samādhi and the retention of what is heard. The fourth stage is called the 'Radiant' because one who cultivates qualities concordant with enlightenment in order to burn the fuel of the afflictions radiates the fire of wisdom.

"The fifth stage is called the 'Unconquerable' because one who skillfully cultivates those same qualities concordant with enlightenment is difficult to overcome. The sixth stage is

called the 'Manifest' because one manifestly realizes the operation of compounded phenomena and manifestly realizes regular mental attention to signlessness.

"The seventh stage is called the 'Gone Afar' because one enters into uninterrupted, continuous mental attention to signlessness for a long time and is subsequently connected to a completely pure stage. The eighth stage is called the 'Immovable' because one spontaneously accomplishes signlessness and is unshaken by the arising of the afflictions of signs.

"The ninth stage is called the 'Good Intelligence' because one attains comprehensive intelligence, faultless in its mastery of teaching the doctrine in all its aspects. The tenth stage is called the 'Cloud of Dharma' because the great cloudlike gathering of Dharma pervades and covers the skylike body of errant tendencies. The eleventh stage is called the 'Buddha stage' because, through having abandoned the most subtle afflictive obstructions and obstructions to omniscience, unattached and unimpeded, one is manifestly, perfectly enlightened with respect to all aspects of objects of knowledge."¹⁶

"Bhagavan, how many obscurations are there to these stages? How many discordant classes of errant tendencies?"

The Bhagavan replied, "Avalokiteśvara, there are twenty-two obscurations and eleven discordant classes of errant tendencies.¹⁷ On the first stage, there are: the obscuration of exaggerated adherence to persons and phenomena; [the obscuration]

of the afflictions due to the afflictions of bad transmigrations; and the discordant class of their errant tendencies.

"On the second [stage], there are: the obscuration of errors that are subtle infractions, the obscuration of the diverse aspects of the fruition of actions, and the discordant class of their errant tendencies. On the third [stage], there are: the obscuration of attachment to desirable experiences, the obscuration to full retention of what is heard, and the discordant class of their errant tendencies.

"On the fourth [stage],¹⁸ there are: the obscuration of craving for meditative absorption, the obscuration of craving for phenomena, and the discordant class of their errant tendencies. On the fifth [stage], there are: the obscuration of mental attention that exclusively turns away from or moves toward saṃsāra; the obscuration of mental attention that exclusively turns away from or moves toward nirvāṇa; and the discordant class of their errant tendencies.¹⁹

"On the sixth [stage], there are: the obscuration to manifestly realizing the operation of compounded phenomena; the obscuration of the arising of many signs; and the discordant class of their errant tendencies.²⁰

"On the seventh [stage], there are: the obscuration of the arising of subtle signs; obscuration with respect to the method of mentally attending just to signlessness; and the discordant class of their errant tendencies.²¹ On the eighth [stage], there are: the obscuration of exertion towards signlessness; the

obscurations of not having mastery over signs; and the discordant class of their errant tendencies.²²

"On the ninth [stage], there are: the obscuration to mastery of the retention of the immeasurable doctrinal teachings, doctrinal words, doctrinal letters, and increasing wisdom and fearless inspiration; the obscuration to mastery of fearless inspiration; and the discordant class of their errant tendencies.²³ On the tenth [stage], there are: the obscuration to the great clairvoyances; obscuration to entering into the secret and subtle; and the discordant class of their errant tendencies.

"On the Buddha stage, there are: the obscuration of very subtle attachment to all that is knowable; the obscuration of [very subtle] obstacles; and the discordant class of their errant tendencies.²⁴ Avalokiteśvara, these [eleven stages] are distinguished by these twenty-two obscurations and these eleven errant tendencies. [Due to them] one does not possess unsurpassed, perfect, complete enlightenment."

"Bhagavan, since Bodhisattvas rend the great net of the obscurations and completely transcend the great jungle of errant tendencies and become awakened—completely, manifestly and perfectly enlightened—the great benefits and great fruits are marvelous! Bhagavan, by how many purities are these [stages] distinguished?"

"Avalokiteśvara, [they are distinguished] by eight [purities]: purity of surpassing thought, purity of mind, purity of compassion, purity of the perfections, purity of perception of and

reverence for the Buddhas, purity of fully ripening sentient beings, purity of birth, and purity of power.

"Avalokiteśvara, know that those purities on the first stage, ranging from the purity of surpassing thought to purity of power, and those purities on progressively higher stages up to the Buddha stage, ranging from the purity of surpassing thought up to the purity of power, are great purities and supreme purities.

"Know that, except for the purity of birth on the Buddha stage, the qualities of the first stage match the qualities of the stages above them, but the qualities particular to each stage have distinct superiorities. Know that all ten Bodhisattva stages have surpassable qualities, but that the Buddha stage has unsurpassable qualities."

"Bhagavan, why is it that, among all births in cyclic existence, a Bodhisattva's birth is known as 'the most excellent'?"

"Avalokiteśvara, this is because of four aspects: [Bodhisattvas] establish exceedingly pure roots of virtue; after individually investigating, they appropriate [what is learned]; they have compassion that protects all beings; and not having afflictions themselves, they overcome others' afflictions."²⁵

"Bhagavan, why is it that Bodhisattvas progress by way of extensive aspirations, have auspicious aspirations, and have the force of aspirations?"²⁶

"Avalokiteśvara, it is because of four aspects: Bodhisattvas are skilled regarding the blissful state of nirvāṇa;²⁷ they are able to quickly attain it; having given up both that quick attainment and that peaceful state, for the benefit of sentient beings they wish to undergo, for a very long time, the manifold sufferings that arise without cause and without purpose.²⁸ Therefore, they are called: 'those who progress by way of extensive aspirations, those who have auspicious aspirations, and those with the force of aspirations'."

"Bhagavan, how many bases of training for Bodhisattvas are there?"

"Avalokiteśvara, there are six: generosity, ethics, patience, effort, concentration, and wisdom."²⁹

"Bhagavan, how many of the six bases are trainings in surpassing ethics? How many are trainings in surpassing mind? How many are trainings in surpassing wisdom?"

"Avalokiteśvara, know that the first three are trainings in surpassing ethics. Concentration is a training in surpassing mind. Wisdom is a training in surpassing wisdom. I explain that effort is omnipresent."³⁰

"Bhagavan, how many of these six bases of training belong to the accumulation of merit? How many belong to the accumulation of wisdom?"

"Avalokiteśvara, training in surpassing ethics belongs to the accumulation of merit. Training in surpassing wisdom

belongs to the accumulation of wisdom. I explain that effort and concentration are omnipresent."

"Bhagavan, how do Bodhisattvas train in these six bases of training?"

"Avalokiteśvara, [Bodhisattvas] train through five aspects: Initially they have great conviction in the Bodhisattva canon that teaches the sacred doctrine including the perfections. Later, through the ten doctrinal practices, they achieve the wisdom arisen from listening, reflecting, and meditating; they safeguard the mind of enlightenment; they rely on spiritual guides; and they apply themselves ceaselessly to a virtuous course."³¹

"Bhagavan, why are these bases of training known as a six-fold classification?"

"Avalokiteśvara, there are two reasons. It is because they benefit sentient beings, and because they are antidotes to the afflictions. Know that three [perfections] benefit sentient beings, while three are antidotes to the afflictions.

"Because Bodhisattvas benefit sentient beings by giving them material goods, they benefit them through generosity. Because they benefit beings by not impoverishing them, not harming them, nor scorning them, they benefit them through ethics. Because they benefit beings by not even considering [their own] impoverishment, harm, or scorn, they benefit

them through patience. Thus they benefit sentient beings through these three [perfections].

"Through effort they apply themselves to a virtuous course that overcomes and completely conquers the afflictions. Thus, the afflictions are unable to sway them from implementing a virtuous course. Through concentration, they suppress the afflictions. Through wisdom, they completely destroy the predispositions [toward afflictions]. These three [perfections] are antidotes to the afflictions."

"Bhagavan, why are the other perfections known to be classified into four types?"³²

"Avalokiteśvara, it is because they assist the six perfections. Having benefitted sentient beings by means of three of the perfections, Bodhisattvas engage in virtue through skillful means conjoined with the [four] means of gathering disciples.³³ Therefore, I teach that the perfection of skillful means assists those [first] three [perfections].

"Avalokiteśvara, if, in this lifetime, due to many afflictions, Bodhisattvas are unable to meditate uninterruptedly; and if, due to inferior constituents and conviction, they have little capacity for surpassing thought and are thus unable to settle the mind internally; and if they have not fully cultivated concentration on the objects of observation that come from hearing the Bodhisattva canon, then they are unable to manifestly achieve the wisdom that transcends the world. Since they have taken up the accumulation of merit, even to a small

extent, the wish that their afflictions decrease in the present and future constitutes the perfection of aspiration. Through this, they are able to lessen afflictions and to initiate effort. Therefore, [I teach that] the perfection of aspiration assists the perfection of effort.

"Then, having relied on holy beings and depended on hearing the holy Dharma, they obtain correct mental contemplation and reverse their limited capacity for surpassing thought. Achieving the power of reflection over the excellent constituents is the perfection of power. Through this, they are able to settle the mind internally. In this way, the perfection of power assists the perfection of concentration.

"They concentrate on full cultivation of the object of observation: the hearing of the Bodhisattva canon. Through this, there [arises] the perfection of exalted wisdom. Because they become able to manifestly achieve the wisdom that transcends the world, I teach that the perfection of exalted wisdom assists the perfection of wisdom."

"Bhagavan, how does one know that the order of the teaching of these six perfections is like this?"

"Avalokiteśvara, it is because [the six perfections] serve as bases for progressively higher achievements. Bodhisattvas who do not focus on their bodies and physical resources attain ethics. Those who guard their moral practice become patient. Those who have patience initiate effort. Those who initiate

effort achieve concentration. Those who achieve concentration attain wisdom that transcends the world."

"Bhagavan, into how many aspects are the perfections divided?"

"Avalokiteśvara, the aspects are threefold. Generosity has three aspects: giving the Dharma, giving material things, and granting fearlessness.³⁴

"Ethics has three aspects: ethics that overcomes non-virtue, ethics that engages in virtue, and ethics that engages in the welfare of sentient beings.

"Patience has three aspects: patience that endures injury, patience that does not consider one's own suffering at all, and patience in discerning the Dharma.³⁵

"Effort has three aspects: effort that is armor, effort applied to virtue, and effort applied for the welfare of sentient beings.³⁶

"Concentration has three aspects: samādhi of blissful abiding that is an antidote to suffering and the afflictions because it is non-conceptual and peaceful; samādhi that manifestly achieves good qualities; and samādhi that manifestly achieves the welfare of sentient beings.³⁷

"Wisdom has three aspects: focusing on conventional truth, focusing on ultimate truth, and focusing on the welfare of sentient beings."³⁸

"Bhagavan, why are the perfections called 'perfections'?"

"Avalokiteśvara, this is due to five [reasons]: non-attachment, non-anticipation [of a reward], non-corruption, non-conceptuality, and complete dedication. Non-attachment is the absence of excessive attachment to things that are contrary to the perfections. Non-anticipation [of a reward] is the absence of mental attachment to the fruitional results or to the beneficial rewards of the perfections. Non-corruption is not adulterating the perfections with afflicted phenomena and abandoning whatever is not skillful. Non-conceptuality is not grasping the characteristics of the perfections literally. Complete dedication is wishing for the fruit of a Bodhisattva, having practiced and accumulated the perfections."

"Bhagavan, what things are contrary to the perfections?"

"Avalokiteśvara, know that there are six things: viewing the pleasure of desirable things, material resources, power, and one's own merit as advantageous qualities; making use of body, speech, and mind according to desire; not enduring scorn; overindulgence through lack of effort; engaging in distractions, diverse worldly activities, and entertainments; and viewing the conventional elaborations of seeing, hearing, distinguishing, and discerning as advantageous qualities."

"Bhagavan, what results from maturing the perfections?"

"Avalokiteśvara, know that [the results] also have six aspects: great resources; going to happy transmigrations; non-enmity,

non-dissension, happiness, and great pleasure; sovereignty over sentient beings; freedom from physical injury; and being renowned as powerful.”

“Bhagavan, what are the things that adulterate the perfections with the afflictions?”

“Avalokiteśvara, know that [the perfections are adulterated] through four types of association: non-compassionate association, incorrect association, inconstant association, and disrespectful association.

“An incorrect association is when, with respect to the other perfections, one lessens one’s cultivation of the perfections other than the one [presently being cultivated].”

“Bhagavan, what is not skillful?”

“Avalokiteśvara, when Bodhisattvas benefit sentient beings by means of the perfections, if they are satisfied merely by providing benefits to beings through [giving] material goods and do not establish them in virtuous states after having raised them up from non-virtuous states, this is not skillful.

“Why is this? Avalokiteśvara, sentient beings are not benefitted by [material goods] alone. For example, no matter whether filth is great or small, one cannot by any means make it sweet-smelling. Similarly, sentient beings who suffer due to

the nature of the suffering of conditioned [existence] cannot be made happy by any means that benefits them through material goods alone. However, whatever establishes [sentient beings] in virtue is of supreme benefit to them."

"Bhagavan, how many kinds of purities are there of the perfections?"

"Avalokiteśvara, I do not state that there are purities of these perfections aside from those five kinds [of purity mentioned previously]. However, in dependence upon just those, I will explain to you—collectively and particularly—the purities of the perfections.

"Know that the collective purities of all the perfections are sevenfold. What are these seven? They are: [Bodhisattvas] do not seek to profit from others through the Bodhisattva teachings; they do not produce obsessive attachment because of viewing these teachings; they do not produce doubt or indecision, thinking 'Do these teachings lead to enlightenment or not?'; they do not praise themselves, nor do they deprecate or despise others; they are not proud and do not act non-conscientiously; they are not content simply with small and inferior [attainments]; and they are not miserly with the teachings, or jealous of others."³⁹

"Know that the specific purities of the perfections are also sevenfold. What are these seven distinctions? They include the seven kinds of pure generosity that I have taught: giving

as pure gifts pure things that are suitable gifts; and giving pure gifts with: purity of ethics, purity of view, purity of mind, purity of speech, purity of knowledge, and purity from defilements.⁴⁰ Bodhisattvas correctly taking up and abiding in these constitute the seven purities of generosity.

"Bodhisattvas are skilled in all aspects of the bases of training with respect to vows; they are skilled in rising above infractions; they have ethics that are certain with respect to that; they have ethics that are firm; they continually practice [ethics]; they continually engage in [ethics]; and they correctly take up the bases of training. These trainings are the seven purities of ethics.

"[Bodhisattvas] do not get angry in situations in which harm comes from all directions, because they are confident in the ripening of their own karma. They do not engage in blaming, reviling, striking, threatening, or harming [others] for the sake of retaliation. They do not cling to resentment. When confessing [their faults], they do not produce afflictions. They do not postpone their confession.⁴¹ They do not practice patience with a mind that is fearful or acquisitive. They do not neglect benefitting others. These are the seven aspects of purity of patience.

"[Bodhisattvas] understand consistent effort. They do not praise themselves or deprecate others because of initiating effort. They are endowed with strength. They are endowed

with effort, enthusiasm, and firm discipline. They never give up striving for virtuous things. These are the seven aspects of purity of effort.

"[Bodhisattvas] concentrate on samādhi that thoroughly understands signs. They concentrate on perfect samādhi. They concentrate on samādhi that includes some of both [the above aspects].⁴² They concentrate on samādhi that arises powerfully. They concentrate on non-abiding samādhi. They concentrate on pliant samādhi. They concentrate on an immeasurable samādhi that fully cultivates the objects of observation of the Bodhisattva canon. These are the seven aspects of purity of concentration.

"[Bodhisattvas] renounce cyclic existence by means of the middle way, having abandoned in their wisdom the extreme of exaggeration and the extreme of deprecation.⁴³ Through wisdom, they also correctly know, just as it is, the meaning of the doors of liberation, the three doors of emptiness, of wishlessness, and of signlessness.

"[Bodhisattvas] also correctly know, just as it is, the meaning of own-being with respect to the three own-beings: the imputational, the other-dependent, and the thoroughly established.

"[Bodhisattvas] also correctly know, just as it is, the meaning of the lack of own-being with respect to the three absences of own-being: of character, of production, and of the ultimate.

"[Bodhisattvas] also correctly know, just as it is, the meaning of conventional truths with respect to the five topics of knowledge.⁴⁴

"[Bodhisattvas] also correctly know, just as it is, the meaning of ultimate truths with respect to the seven aspects of suchness. And, through abiding often in the single mode that is non-conceptual and free from elaboration, and through vipaśyana which observes doctrines that are immeasurably integrated, they correctly accomplish the attainment of the teachings that are concordant with doctrine. Know that these are the seven forms of purity of wisdom."

"Bhagavan, what are the individual capabilities of the five aspects?"⁴⁵

"Avalokiteśvara, know that there are also five kinds of capabilities: Because they are free from attachment, Bodhisattvas act conscientiously in this lifetime, applying themselves to the perfections with uninterrupted and devoted application. Because they do not anticipate [rewards], they sustain the cause of future conscientiousness. Because they are without corruption, they cultivate the perfections completely, purely, and proficiently. Because they are free from conceptuality, they quickly complete the perfections through skillful means. Because they dedicate [themselves] completely [for others], in all their lifetimes—up to the time of unsurpassed, complete, perfect enlightenment—they obtain inexhaustible perfections that have the fruitional results that they wish for."

"Bhagavan, what are the vastnesses of these perfections?"

"Avalokiteśvara, these are: non-attachment, non-anticipation [of reward], and complete dedication."

"What is the absence of the afflictions?"

"It is non-corruption and non-conceptuality."

"What is purification?"

"It is individual investigation and action."

"What is non-fluctuation?"

"It is the non-degenerating reality of those who have entered the [Bodhisattva] stages."

"What is exceptional purity?"

"Avalokiteśvara, it is what belongs to the tenth stage and what belongs to the Buddha stage."

"Bhagavan, why are Bodhisattvas always endowed with the inexhaustible desirable fruitional results of the perfections and the inexhaustible perfections?"

"Avalokiteśvara, it is because they cultivate the progressive attainment of each [perfection] in dependence on the others."

"Bhagavan, why is it that Bodhisattvas do not abide through faith in the desirable fruitional results of the perfections in the same way that they abide in the perfections?"

"Avalokiteśvara, this is due to five causes: The perfections are causes of surpassingly great happiness and pleasure; they are causes of benefit for oneself and others; they bring about

desirable fruitional results in the future; they are the bases of non-affliction; and they are unchangeable reality."

"Bhagavan, what are the distinct powers of the perfections?"

"Avalokiteśvara, know that they have four distinct kinds of power. When [Bodhisattvas] cultivate the perfections, they abandon the discordances of greed, faulty ethics, mental agitation, laziness, distraction, and [wrong] views. They become unsurpassably, completely, and perfectly enlightened. In this lifetime, they benefit themselves and others. In the future, they obtain desirable results that are extensive and inexhaustible."

"Bhagavan, from what cause do the perfections arise? What are their results? What is their significance?"

The Bhagavan replied: "Avalokiteśvara, the perfections arise from the cause of compassion. Their results are desirable fruits and benefits for sentient beings. Their great significance is the completion of great enlightenment."

"Bhagavan, if the resources of Bodhisattvas are inexhaustible and if they have compassion, why are there poor people in the world?"

"Avalokiteśvara, that is solely the fault of the actions of those sentient beings themselves. If this were not so, if sentient beings' own faults did not become obstacles, then beings could always engage in actions, and they would have inexhaustible resources; in which case how could any suffering appear in the world?"

"Avalokiteśvara, for example, the fact that hungry ghosts, whose bodies are pained by thirst, perceive the watery ocean as dry is not the ocean's failing. It is a fault resulting from those hungry ghosts' own actions.

"Similarly, the absence of good results is not a failing of the ocean-like generosity of Bodhisattvas. The faulty actions of those sentient beings who are like hungry ghosts are their own fault."⁴⁶

"Bhagavan, with what perfection do Bodhisattvas apprehend the lack of own-being of phenomena?"

"Avalokiteśvara, they apprehend this with the perfection of wisdom."

"Bhagavan, if they apprehend lack of own-being with the perfection of wisdom, why do they also not apprehend it with own-being?"

"Avalokiteśvara, I do not say that own-being apprehends what is without own-being. Yet, since lack of own-being is individually known without words, without being taught by words, I have spoken of 'apprehension of lack of own-being'."

"Bhagavan, when you say, 'perfection', 'further perfection', and 'great perfection', Bhagavan, what is perfection? What is further perfection? What is great perfection?"

"Avalokiteśvara, there are Bodhisattvas endowed with virtuous qualities, generosity and the like, which they cultivate through immeasurable time. Still, afflictions arise in them and

they are unable to overcome them. Instead, they are overcome by them. Involvement in small or middling conviction on the stage of engagement through conviction is called 'perfection'.

"There are also those endowed with virtuous qualities which they greatly and thoroughly cultivate through immeasurable time. Although afflictions arise in them, they overcome them and are not overcome by them. Those [states] beginning with the first [Bodhisattva] stage are called 'further perfections'.

"There are, further, those endowed with virtuous qualities which they greatly and very thoroughly cultivate through immeasurable time. They are distinguished by the fact that the afflictions never arise in them at all. Those [states] beginning with the eighth [Bodhisattva] stage are called 'great perfections'."

"Bhagavan, how many kinds of predispositions toward afflictions are there on those stages?"

"Avalokiteśvara, there are three kinds. Avalokiteśvara, there are 'the assistors that are completely destroyed'. On the first five stages the production of non-innate afflictions that assist in the production of innate afflictions does not occur; this is called 'the assistors that are completely destroyed'.⁴⁷

"There are also the predispositions that are of little power: On the sixth and seventh stages, there are extremely subtle arisings and arisings that are suppressed by meditation.

"There are the extremely subtle predispositions: On the eighth stage and those [stages] above it, the afflictions do not arise at all and thus abide only as obstructions to omniscience."

"Bhagavan, into how many kinds of abandonment of errant tendencies are these predispositions divided?"

"Avalokiteśvara, [they are divided] into three kinds. The first and second are the abandoning of errant tendencies that are like something existing on the outer layer of the skin; the third is the abandoning [of errant tendencies] that are like something existing in subcutaneous skin. As for those who have abandoned errant tendencies that are like something existing in the marrow, in which state predispositions do not exist at all, I have taught that they are on the Buddha stage."⁴⁸

"Bhagavan, for how many incalculable eons does one abandon these errant tendencies?"

"Avalokiteśvara, [one abandons them] for three incalculable eons. One abandons them for incalculable eons of: seasons, months, half-months, days and nights, days, three-hour periods, one-and-one-half-hour periods, moments, instants, and microseconds."⁴⁹

"Bhagavan, what are the characteristics of the arising of a Bodhisattva's afflictions on those stages? What are the faults? What are the good qualities that should be known?"

"Avalokiteśvara, the arising of a Bodhisattva's afflictions is characterized by an absence of affliction. Why is this so? One realizes the entire Dharmadhātu with certainty on the first

Bodhisattva stage. Thereafter, the afflictions of Bodhisattvas arise only consciously, and never unconsciously. Thus [Bodhisattvas] are characterized by an absence of affliction.⁵⁰

“Because suffering cannot arise in their continuums, [Bodhisattvas] are faultless. Because they are causes of overcoming suffering in the realms of sentient beings, [a Bodhisattva’s afflictions] are immeasurably good qualities.”⁵¹

“Bhagavan, if in that way even the arising of the Bodhisattvas’ afflictions outshines all the roots of virtue of sentient beings, [including] Śrāvakas and Pratyekabuddhas, what need is there to mention that their other good qualities [do so also]? The great significance of their enlightenment is marvelous!

“Bhagavan, the Bhagavañ has said: ‘The Śrāvaka vehicle and the Great Vehicle are one vehicle.’ What was your thought when [you said] that?”

“Avalokiteśvara, those very things that I have taught in the Śrāvaka vehicle as the own-being of diverse things—such as the five aggregates, the six internal sense spheres, the six external sense spheres, and the like—I have also taught in the Mahāyāna as being of one mode in terms of the Dharmadhātu. Therefore, I do not speak of there being different vehicles.

“Some who understand [my teachings] according to the literal meaning engage in exaggeration and some in deprecation, thinking that there are various vehicles. [When I spoke] my thought was of those two who were thinking discordantly and disputing with one another.”

Then the Bhagavan spoke these verses:

“Phenomena that I described as having
various natures in Mahāyāna and Hīnayāna
I taught again as having one mode.

Thus, I do not propound different vehicles.

“Thinking in terms of the literal meaning
creates exaggerations and deprecations.

If one thinks that they are contradictory,
in confusion, one forms various ideas.

“The collective stages and their names, discordances,
distinctive arisings, aspirations, and trainings
are the Buddha’s explanation of the Great Vehicle.⁵²

Those who make effort at these become Buddhas.”

Then the Bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara asked the Bhagavan:
“Bhagavan, what is the name of this form of Dharma discourse
that explains your thought? How should it be apprehended?”

The Bhagavan replied, “Avalokiteśvara, this is the teaching
of the definitive meaning of the stages and the perfections.
Apprehend it as ‘the teaching of the definitive meaning of the
stages and the perfections’.”

When this teaching of the definitive meaning of the stages
and the perfections was explained, seventy-five thousand
Bodhisattvas attained the Bodhisattva’s samādhi that illumi-
nates the Mahāyāna.

This completes the ninth chapter of Avalokiteśvara.



Homage to the Mahābodhisattva Mañjuśrī



འཇམ་དབལ་གྱི་ལུ་སྟོ་བཙུ་བ།

The Questions of
Mañjuśrī

Chapter Ten

Then the Bodhisattva Mañjuśrī¹ asked the Bhagavan: "Bhagavan, when you speak of 'the Dharmakāya of the Tathāgatas', Bhagavan, what are the characteristics of the Dharmakāya of the Tathāgatas?"

The Bhagavan replied: "Mañjuśrī, the characteristics of the Dharmakāya of the Tathāgatas are the well-established transformation of the basis through renunciation, the complete cultivation of the [ten] stages and the [six] perfections.² Moreover, know that this [Dharmakāya] has an inconceivable characteristic for two reasons: because it is free from elaborations and free from manifest activity; and because sentient beings very strongly adhere to elaborations and manifest activity."³

"Bhagavan, is the transformation of the basis of Śrāvakas and Pratyekabuddhas also suitably referred to as 'Dharmakāya'?"

"Mañjuśrī, they are not spoken of [in this way]."

"Bhagavan, in that case, what should they be called?"

"Mañjuśrī, they are liberation bodies. Mañjuśrī, in terms of liberation bodies, Tathāgatas, Śrāvakas, and Pratyekabuddhas are similar and equal. In terms of the Dharmakāya, [Tathāgatas] are superior. Since the Dharmakāya is superior, [Tathāgatas] are also superior in terms of immeasurably good qualities. It is not easy to provide examples of that."⁴

"Bhagavan, how should one know the characteristics of a Tathāgata's genesis?"

“Mañjuśrī, the characteristics of the Nirmāṇakāya are like the arising of worldly realms. You should see the characteristics of the Nirmāṇakāya as characteristics that are empowered by all the types of adornments displaying the qualities of the Tathāgatas which arise.⁵ The Dharmakāya has no genesis.”

“Bhagavan, how should one view the skillful method that displays the Nirmāṇakāya?”

“Mañjuśrī, view the skillful method⁶ that displays the Nirmāṇakāya as everywhere displaying the stages: entering the womb in a household of one renowned as a sovereign in all the Buddha fields of the trichiliocosm or of one renowned as being worthy of gifts; taking birth; growing up; enjoying worldly pleasures; leaving home; fully demonstrating the practice of austerities all at once; renouncing them; and displaying the stages of complete, perfect enlightenment.”

“Bhagavan, through the Tathāgatas’ empowerment-body, Tathāgatas mature trainees’ immature constituents by expressing their teachings, and they teach mature beings in a liberative way by these objects of observation. How many expressions [of the teachings] are there?”

“Mañjuśrī, the teachings of the Tathāgatas are threefold: Sūtra, Vinaya, and Māṭrkā.”

“Bhagavan, what are the Sūtra teachings? What are Vinaya? What are Māṭrkā?”

“Mañjuśrī, my teachings which gather together the categories of the Dharma, classifying them into four, nine, or twenty-nine subjects, are the Sūtras.

“What are the four categories? They are: listening, taking refuge, training, and enlightenment.⁷

“What are the nine categories? They are the categories of designating sentient beings, of their resources, their births, their states of being, their affliction and purification, their varieties, the teacher, the teaching, and associates.

“What are the twenty-nine categories? Those [categories] concerned with the class of afflicted phenomena are the following:⁸ (1) collected compounded phenomena, (2) progressive engagement with them, (3) the cause of their future arising after having named persons with respect to them, and (4) the cause of their future arising after having named things.

“Those [categories] concerned with the class of purified phenomena are the following:⁹ (5) designating objects of observation, (6) exertion with respect to just those, (7) the abodes of sentient beings, (8) abiding happily in this lifetime, (9) objects of observation that are means for completely transcending all suffering, and (10) thoroughly knowing those [objects of observation], which is threefold: thoroughly knowing the basis of error; thoroughly knowing the basis of the mistaken attainments of non-Buddhists, beginning with the conception of sentient beings [as existing in terms of a self]; and thoroughly knowing the basis of the absence of conceit among Buddhists.

"[There are also] the categories of: (11) the basis of meditation, (12) actualization, (13) meditation, (14) doing [meditation] as an essential activity, (15) the aspects of [meditation], (16) its objects of observation, (17) skill concerning investigation into what has been abandoned and what has not yet been abandoned, (18) being distracted from that [meditation], (19) not being distracted from [meditation], (20) the basis of non-distraction, (21) clearing away aversion to meditation through meditating, (22) the benefits of meditation, (23) the stability of that [meditation], (24) the collection of the Āryas' sovereign traits, (25) the gathering of Āryas and their associates, (26) the realization of suchness, (27) the complete attainment of nirvāṇa, (28) the fact that the correct views held by worldlings with respect to the disciplinary doctrine that has been well explained are superior to the correct views held by all of those who are outside of this [doctrine].

"[Finally,] (29) the category of degeneration due to not cultivating that [disciplinary doctrine]. Mañjuśrī, with respect to the disciplinary doctrine that has been well explained, degeneration occurs due to non-cultivation, not due to faulty view.

"Mañjuśrī, this category [of the Vinaya] consists of my teachings of the prātimokṣa for Śrāvakas and Bodhisattvas and what is associated with prātimokṣa."

"Bhagavan, of how many aspects is the Bodhisattvas' prātimokṣa known to consist?"

"Mañjuśrī, it consists of seven aspects: teachings concerning properly performed rites, teachings of things such as the bases of defeat,¹⁰ teachings of things such as the bases of infractions, teachings of the own-being of infractions, teachings of the own-being of non-infractions, teachings concerning emerging from infractions, and teachings concerning abandonment of vows.

"Mañjuśrī, 'Mātrkāś' are that which I have explained, differentiated, and taught in terms of eleven types of characters: the conventional character, the ultimate character, the character of the objects of observation of phenomena in harmony with enlightenment, the character of aspects, the character of own-being, the character of the fruition of that, the character of describing the experience of that, the character of phenomena which interrupt that, the character of phenomena concordant with that, the character of disadvantages to that, and the character of benefits to that.

"Mañjuśrī, view the conventional character as being of three types: the teaching of persons; the teaching of the own-being of the imputational nature; and the teaching of the activities, movements, and workings of phenomena.

"View the ultimate character in terms of the teaching of suchness in seven aspects. View the character of the objects of observation in terms of the teaching of all aspects of things that are objects of knowledge. View the character of aspects in terms of the teaching of the eight types of analytical reasoning.

What are the eight types of analytical reasoning? [They are analytical reasoning concerning]: truth, positings, faults, good qualities, modes, engagement, reasoning, and condensing and elaborating.

“Truth is whatever is suchness. Positings are: positing persons; or positing the own-being of the imputational; or positing categorically, making differentiations, or answering a rhetorical question; or positing a position; or positing an answer to the secret and to the differentiated.

“Faults are the disadvantages of afflicted phenomena which I have described in many forms of explanation.¹¹ Good qualities are the benefits of pure phenomena which I have described in many forms of explanation.¹²

“Modes should be known through six aspects: the mode of the meaning of suchness, the mode of attainment, the mode of explanation, the mode of abandoning the two extremes, the mode of the inconceivable, and the mode of [Buddha’s] thought. Engagement [refers to] the three times, the three characters of compounded phenomena, and the four conditions.

“Reasoning should be known in terms of four aspects: analysis of dependence, analysis of performance of functions, analysis of logical correctness, and analysis of reality.

“In regard to ‘analysis of dependence’, whatever are causes and conditions for compounded phenomena, and their subsequent conventional designations are [the subject matter of] analysis of dependence.¹³ Whatever are causes and conditions

for the attainment of phenomena, their establishment, or their activities are [the subject matter of] 'analysis of performance of functions'.¹⁴ Whatever are causes and conditions for individual understanding, explanation, establishing the meaning of propositions, and comprehension are [the subject matter of] 'analysis of logical correctness'.¹⁵

"Moreover, in brief, there are two types [of analysis of logical correctness]: pure and impure. The characteristics of the pure type are fivefold. The characteristics of the impure type are sevenfold. The five characteristics of the pure type are: the characteristic of directly observing something, the characteristic of directly observing the basis of something, the characteristic of providing an example of its own type, the characteristic of establishment, and the characteristic of teaching in the manner of delineating very pure scriptures.

"The characteristic of directly observing something' is direct observation of the impermanence of all compounded phenomena, the suffering inherent in all compounded phenomena, the selflessness of all phenomena in the world, and things concordant with these. 'The characteristic of directly observing the basis of something' is: directly observing the reasoning concerning impermanence, which is based on the momentariness of all compounded phenomena, the existence of a future world, and the non-dissipation of virtuous and non-virtuous actions;¹⁶ directly observing that various sentient beings are based on various karmas; directly observing

that sentient beings' happiness or suffering is based on their virtuous or non-virtuous actions; inferring what is not directly observed by means of these; and things concordant with these.

"Know that 'the characteristic of providing an example of its own type' is: providing [examples] of observing disintegration and arising which are well known in all worlds with respect to internal and external compounded phenomena; providing [examples] of observing the suffering of birth and so forth; providing [examples] of observing lack of autonomy; providing [examples] of observing the fortunes and troubles that are known in all worlds as well as in future worlds; and things concordant with these.

"Through ascertaining that [the three]—the characteristic of directly observing something, the characteristic of directly observing a basis of something, and the characteristic of providing an example of its own type—are unitary in terms of establishment, one knows 'the characteristic of establishment'.

"Mañjuśrī, know that the teachings set forth by omniscient persons—teachings such as: 'Nirvāṇa is peace,' and things that are concordant with such teachings—constitute 'the characteristic of teaching in the manner of delineating very pure scriptures'. Thus, by way of these five characteristics, analytical reasonings are purified. Because they are purified, you should rely on them."

"Bhagavan, by how many aspects are the characteristics of omniscient persons to be known?"¹⁷

"Mañjuśrī, they are known through five aspects: Suitable persons arise who are proclaimed in all worlds as omniscient; they are endowed with the thirty-two marks of a great being; they eliminate all the doubts of every sentient being through the ten powers; through the four fearlessnesses,¹⁸ the words of their doctrinal teachings are free from the objections and disputes of all opponents; and in their disciplinary doctrine the eight branches of the path of Āryas and the four virtuous practices appear. Thus you should know that arising, marks, elimination of doubts, freedom from objections and freedom from disputes, and observing virtuous practices are the five characteristics of omniscient persons.

"Analysis of logical correctness is purified through: direct valid perception, valid inference, valid believable scriptures, and through these five characteristics [of omniscient persons].

"What are the seven characteristics of impure reasonings?"¹⁹ They are: having objects of observation concordant with what is other than that [which one is trying to establish]; having objects of observation discordant with what is other than that [which one is trying to establish]; having objects of observation that are concordant with everything; having objects of observation that are discordant with everything; providing examples of another type; non-establishment; and the teachings of impure scriptures.

"[The statement] 'All phenomena are known by the mental consciousness,' is [an example of] 'the characteristic of objects of observation that are concordant with everything'. [The statement] 'Because any discordant characteristic [such as] the discordant characteristics of signs, own-beings, karma, phenomena, causes, and effects is certainly a mutually discordant characteristic,' is [an example of] 'the characteristic of having an object of observation that is discordant with everything'.

"Mañjuśrī, the characteristic of having objects of observation that are discordant with everything exists within examples of 'the characteristic of having objects of observation that are concordant with what is other than that [which one is trying to establish]'. Therefore it is not ascertained as being united with what is to be established. This is therefore [designated as] 'the characteristic of what is non-established'.

"The characteristic of having objects of observation that are concordant with everything also exists in the examples of the characteristic of having objects of observation that are discordant with what is other than that [which one is trying to establish]. Therefore it is not ascertained as being united with what is to be established. Therefore this is also [designated as] 'the characteristic of what is non-established'.

"Because they are non-established, these analyses are impure. Because they are impure, they should not be taught.²⁰

"Know that 'the characteristics of the teachings of very impure scriptures' are inherently impure.

"Whether Tathāgatas arise or do not arise, because the Dharma abides, the abiding of the sphere of reality is the 'analysis of reality'.²¹

"'Condensing and elaborating' is summarizing and carefully differentiating the teachings in an orderly manner, in terms of individual doctrinal phrases. It is that which deals with [the teachings] definitively.

"That which I have taught as phenomena in harmony with enlightenment, the [four] mindful establishments and so forth, that apprehend objects of observation together with their aspects are the characteristics of the own-being of those.

"Abandoning the afflictions associated with both the mundane and supramundane manifestly establishes its fruits, which are mundane and supramundane excellent qualities. That is the characteristic of attaining its fruits.²²

"Comprehending the liberative knowledge of 'just that', one extensively proclaims it, explains it, and perfectly teaches it to others. That is the characteristic of describing the experience of that.

"Afflicted phenomena such as the bases that interrupt the cultivation of phenomena in harmony with enlightenment are the characteristics of phenomena which interrupt that.

"Phenomena that enhance those are the characteristics of phenomena which are concordant with that. Faults that interrupt [those] are the characteristics of disadvantages to that.

“Mañjuśrī, know that concordant good qualities are the characteristics of the benefits of that.”

Then Bodhisattva Mañjuśrī again spoke to the Bhagavan: “Bhagavan, please teach the quintessential meanings by which Bodhisattvas enter into the indirect thought of the profound doctrines spoken by the Tathāgata. [Teach] all of the quintessential meanings of the Bodhisattvas’ Sūtra discourses, Vinaya, and Mātṛkā that are distinct from those of non-Buddhists.”

“Mañjuśrī, listen, and I will explain to you all of the quintessential meanings, so that Bodhisattvas may engage in that which I have spoken of indirectly.

“Mañjuśrī, all afflicted phenomena and purified phenomena are unmoving and without personhood. Therefore, I teach that phenomena are without activity in all their aspects. Further, it is not the case that afflicted phenomena are previously afflicted and subsequently purified. Nor is it the case that purified phenomena have been subsequently purified, after having been previously afflicted.

“Childish ordinary beings, relying on views that predispose them toward exaggerated adherence to the phenomena within the collection of errant tendencies and to an own-being of persons,²³ grasp at ‘I’ and ‘mine’. Due to this, they mistakenly conceive ‘I see,’ ‘I hear,’ ‘I smell,’ ‘I experience,’ ‘I touch,’ ‘I know,’ ‘I eat,’ ‘I act,’ ‘I am afflicted,’ and ‘I am purified.’

"Those who understand reality just as it is, having fully abandoned the collection of errant tendencies, have no basis for any of the afflictions. They attain a body that is very pure, free from elaborations, uncompounded, and free from manifest activity. Mañjuśrī, know that this is the entire quintessential meaning."

Then the Bhagavan spoke these verses:

"Afflicted phenomena and pure phenomena
are all without activity and personhood.
Thus I explain that they are without activity:
not purified or afflicted in the past or future.

"Relying on views that predispose one to the
collection of errant tendencies,
one grasps at 'I' and 'mine';
one thinks 'I see,' 'I eat,' 'I act,'
'I am afflicted,' and 'I am purified.'

"Knowing reality just as it is, abandoning the
collection of errant tendencies,
one attains a pure body with no basis for the afflictions,
free from elaborations and uncompounded."

"Bhagavan, how should one know the characteristics of a
Tathāgata's mental factors?"

"Mañjuśrī, Tathāgatas are not distinguished by mind,
thought, or consciousness. Indeed, you should know that a

Tathāgata's mind arises free from manifest activity; it is like an emanation."²⁴

"Bhagavan, if the Dharmakāya of Tathāgatas is free from all manifest activity, in that case, how could there be mental factors in the absence of manifest activity?"

"Mañjuśrī, this is due to the previous manifest activity of cultivating method and wisdom. Mañjuśrī, for example, even though during mindless sleep there is no manifest activity for awakening, due to the force of former manifest activity, one will awaken. Even though, absorbed in cessation, there is no manifest activity for rising from absorption, due to the force of former manifest activity, one will rise. Just as the mind emerges from sleep and absorption in cessation, know that the Tathāgatas' mental factors come from the previous manifest activity of cultivating method and wisdom."

"Bhagavan, do Tathāgatas have emanation minds or not?"

"Mañjuśrī, the minds do not exist, nor do the minds not exist; these minds lack autonomy and are empowered by [the Tathāgatas'] minds."²⁵

"Bhagavan, what is the difference between 'the spheres of activity of Tathāgatas' and 'the domains of Tathāgatas'?"

"Mañjuśrī, the spheres of activity of Tathāgatas are the completely pure Buddha fields, arrayed with limitless, inconceivable qualities common to all Tathāgatas. The domains of

Tathāgatas are the five realms in all of their aspects: the realms of sentient beings, the worldly realms, the realms of phenomena, the realms of discipline, and the realms of the methods of discipline. This is the difference between these two."

"Bhagavan, what are the characteristics of the manifest, complete enlightenment of Tathāgatas, their turning the wheel of doctrine, and their great parinirvāṇa?"

"Mañjuśrī, they are of a non-dual character. They are neither manifestly, completely enlightened, nor not manifestly, completely enlightened. They neither turn the wheel of doctrine, nor do they not turn the wheel of doctrine. They neither have a great parinirvāṇa, nor do they lack a great parinirvāṇa. This is because the Dharmakāya is very pure and the Nirmāṇakāya are fully revealed."

"Bhagavan, how is it that Nirmāṇakāya are known to come forth from Tathāgatas so that sentient beings generate merit through viewing, hearing, and revering them?"

"Mañjuśrī, [a Nirmāṇakāya comes forth] due to intensely observing the Tathāgatas, and also because Nirmāṇakāya are the blessings of the Tathāgatas."

"Bhagavan, if [Tathāgatas] appear to be without manifest activity, why is it that the great light of exalted wisdom arises for sentient beings only from the Dharmakāya of Tathāgatas, and that although incalculable emanations arise [from the

Tathāgatas], [emanations] do not arise from the liberation bodies of Śrāvakas and Pratyekabuddhas?”

“Mañjuśrī, for example, though [sentient beings] appear to be without manifest activity, through the blessings of powerful sentient beings and the force of the karma of sentient beings, a great light appears to sentient beings from the water-crystals and fire-crystals of the orbs of the moon and sun. [Illumination] does not arise from other water-crystals and fire-crystals.²⁶ A jeweler polishes a precious gem and its crystalline pattern emerges. But it will not emerge from the work of others who do not polish in this way. Similarly, the great light of exalted wisdom and innumerable emanations appear to sentient beings from the Dharmakāya because it has been established through training in cultivating method and wisdom which observe the immeasurable Dharmadhātu. However, this [light] does not arise from a mere liberation body.”

“Bhagavan, with what thought in mind did the Bhagavan say, ‘Due to the power of the blessings of Tathāgatas and Bodhisattvas, there exist the marvelous bodies of humans in the desire realm, such as those of the Kṣatriyas or Brahmans, and those like great śāla trees;’²⁷ all the marvelous bodies of the gods who act in the desire realm; all the marvelous bodies of the gods who act in the form realm; and all the marvelous bodies of gods who act in the formless realm’?”

“Mañjuśrī, having received the Tathāgatas’ blessings, Tathāgatas teach, just as they are, the paths and practices for

completely attaining all the marvelous bodies, gained by means of such paths and practices. Those who engage in these paths and practices attain all the marvelous bodies in all ways. Whoever abandons and reviles these paths and practices and also whoever holds bitter and angry thoughts regarding them will encounter all kinds of physical woes at the time of death.

“Mañjuśrī, by this form of explanation, know that not only do marvelous bodies arise in this way from the power of the Tathāgatas’ blessings, but also the production of physical woes occurs from the power of the Tathāgatas’ blessings.”

“Bhagavan, in worldly realms that are not completely pure, what things are common, and what things are rare? In completely pure [worldly realms,] what things are common, and what things are rare?”²⁸

“Mañjuśrī, in worldly realms that are not completely pure, eight things are common, and two are rare. Tīrthikas; suffering sentient beings; distinctions of lineage, family, patrilineage, wealth, and poverty; practitioners of harmful actions; those of degenerated ethics; bad transmigrations; Hīnayānists; and Bodhisattvas of inferior thoughts and practices are common. But Bodhisattvas who exert themselves in excellent thoughts and practices and the arising of Tathāgatas are rare.

“Mañjuśrī, in completely pure worldly realms, it is the opposite of this. Know that the eight things are rare and the two things are common.”

Then the Bodhisattva Mañjuśrī asked the Bhagavan: “Bhagavan, what is the name of this form of Dharma discourse that explains your thought? How should it be apprehended?”

The Bhagavan replied: “Mañjuśrī, this is ‘the definitive instruction establishing the deeds of Tathāgatas’. Mañjuśrī, it should be apprehended as ‘the definitive instruction establishing the deeds of Tathāgatas’.”

When this definitive instruction establishing the deeds of Tathāgatas was explained, seventy-five thousand Bodhisattvas attained correct and perfect knowledge of the perfect Dharma-kāya. After the Bhagavan had spoken, the youthful Mañjuśrī, the entire assembly, and the worlds of gods, humans, asuras, and gandharvas praised this teaching of the Bhagavan.

This concludes ‘Ascertaining the Tathāgatas’ Collection of Qualities’, the [final] chapter of the Ārya Saṃdhinirmocana Mahāyāna-nāma Sūtra.



Notes

Notes to Chapter One

1 The seven precious substances are: gser (gold), dngul (silver), vaidūrya (lapis lazuli), spug (a greenish-yellow gem according to W), rdo'i-snying-po (jasper), mu-tig-mar-po (coral), and ke-ke-ru (cat's eye). (B, vol. cho [205]:15.3 and W, vol. ti [118]:107.2) For a further discussion of the seven substances, which are difficult to identify conclusively, see S (vol. II, 318) and Rin-po-che-brtag-thabs-mdor-bsdus-nyung-gsal by Ngag-dbang-blo-bzang (Ngag-dbang-blo-bzang-gsung-'bum, Indian blockprint, n.d., vol. ha).

2 "Limitless in reach" (mtha'-yas-pa-rnam-par-gzhag-pa, ananta-vyavasthāna) means that it is "limitless in number and limitless in area," and is "dwelling in a distinctively superior way, or dwelling in various aspects, or abiding limitlessly." (B, vol. cho [205]:16.5)

3 That which "transcends the world" is non-conceptual exalted wisdom (mi-rtog-pa'i-ye-shes, nirvikalpaka-jñāna). (B, vol. cho [205]:18.1) This wisdom "transcends the world" due to completion of causes. The root of supreme virtue that causes the palace to arise is the "non-conceptual exalted wisdom of subsequent attainment" (mi-rtog-pa'i-rjes-thob-ye-shes, nirvikalpaka-prṣṭha-labdha-jñāna), which transcends the three worlds. (W, vol. ti [118]:116.5) The palace is a manifestation of the pure mind of the Buddha, and "except for cognition-only (rnam-par-rig-pa-tsam, vijñapti-mātra), the jewels and so forth do not exist." (W 118.2, quoting Nye-ba'i-'od)

4 "One who has mastery" (dbang-sgyur, vaśībhūta) refers to "a yogin who has achieved the [ten] spheres of totality and so forth and who has mastery over all desires for things." (B, vol. cho [205]:19.1. See also S, vol. II, 319)

5 These are advanced Bodhisattvas who have entered into the great stages [probably the eighth stage and above]. (S, vol. II, 319)

6 Devas are the gods of the heaven realms. Nāgas are serpent-like beings who inhabit water-realms. Yakṣas are powerful beings, sometimes beneficent and sometimes malignant, who live on earth, in the air, and in the lower heavens. Gandharvas are celestial musicians who live in the air. Asuras are the opponents of the gods with whom they wage constant war, primarily motivated by intense envy for the superior fortunes of the gods. Garuḍas have eagle wings and lion heads and are the natural enemies of the nāgas. Kinnaras are half man, half horse. Mahoragas are large-bellied demons shaped like boas who are lords of the soil. Non-humans are often identified as ghosts or malignant spirits.

7 There are many demons (bdud, māra), whose goal is to tempt beings into ignorance. The four main types of demons are:

demons of the aggregates (phung-po'i-bdud, skandha-māra)
demons of the Lord of Death ('chi-bdag-gi-bdud, mṛtyu-māra)
demons of the afflictions (nyon-mongs-pa'i-bdud, kleśa-māra)
demons who are sons of gods (lha'i-bu'i-bdud, devaputra-māra).

Their function is to harm virtuous qualities, and this is why they are called demons. (W, vol. ti [118]:129.7, 193.2)

8 The "jeweled lotuses" (rin-po-che'i-padma, ratna-padma) are "lotuses having the nature of precious jewels." They are characterized as "great kings" (rgyal-po-chen-po, mahārāja) because "they are both great kings of precious jewels and also great kings of lotuses. Alternatively, the jeweled lotuses are the lotuses of the retinue that arise from the Bodhisattvas' blessings. The 'great kings' are the gurus of those Bodhisattvas and so forth. These great kings of doctrine are just those great lotuses that arise from the virtuous roots of Buddhas and Bhagavans." (B, vol. cho [205]:26.1)

9 This list of Buddha qualities also appears in S (vol. II, 134-43). According to S, all the qualities cited are elaborations of the first one: "Buddha's mind of good understanding." "A mind of good understanding is one that understands the varieties of compounded and uncompounded phenomena and how they actually exist." (B, vol. cho [205]:27.6) The "two [negative] behaviors" are the afflictive obstructions (nyon-mongs-pa'i-sgrib-pa, kleśāvaraṇa) and the obstructions

to omniscience (shes-bya'i-sgrib-pa, jñeyāvaraṇa) that are the behaviors of childish beings and Śrāvakas respectively. (B 28.1)

10 "Abiding in the way that a Buddha abides" means that the Buddha "abides without abiding" (gnas-pa-med-par-gnas-pa). This refers to the non-abiding nirvāṇa (mi-gnas-pa'i-mya-ngan-las-'das-pa, apratiṣṭhita-nirvāṇa) in which Buddhas abide. (W, vol. ti [118]:142.5, citing Vasubandhu's commentary on MS)

11 According to W, this refers to four qualities (although he lists only three): "abiding in the Dharmakāya (chos-kyi-sku-la-gnas-pa); thought (dgongs-pa); and not having discrepancies in performance of actions (phrin-las-mdzad-pa-tha-dad-pa-mi-mnga'-ba)." An explanation from a commentary on MS states that "thought" refers to the Saṃbhogakāya, and "performance of actions" refers to the Nirmāṇakāya. W adds: "In terms of those three, all the Tathāgatas of the ten directions and the three times are similar and non-different; therefore, they have 'attained [sameness with all Buddhas]'." (W, vol. ti [118]:143.3. See also Bh 6.4)

The "obscurations" are the afflictive obstructions and the obstructions to omniscience, which Buddhas have abandoned "through having cultivated the paths of Āryas." (B, vol. cho [205]:38.2)

12 This refers to "the quality of correctly positing doctrines." Vasubandhu explains that "these correct doctrines that are Sūtras and so forth are immeasurable and inconceivable and are not objects of knowledge by ordinary beings. In dependence upon Buddhas, doctrines that are taught are 'posited'; they are not objects of knowledge by children. Therefore, they are 'inconceivable'." (W, vol. ti [118]:146.4)

13 The embodiment of a Tathāgata is "unimaginable" (rnam-par-ma-brtags-pa, nirvikalpa) because it is free from all elaborations (spros-pa, prapañca), and so cannot be imagined by ordinary beings, whose bodies are produced from conceptual thought and elaborations. "The bodies of ordinary beings arise from conceptuality. Moreover, from elaborations imagination [arises]; from conceptuality actions and afflictions arise; from actions and afflictions a body of suffering is produced. That body is an afflicted body. Because Tathāgatas are free from all elaborations, they do not have conceptuality. Therefore, [Tathāgatas] do not have bodies that are produced by actions and afflictions. Because their unimaginable

embodiments are inconceivable they are distinguished by the quality of appropriating an embodiment that is free from afflictions." (B, vol. cho [205]:32.4)

14 This refers to the non-dual Dharmakāya. (W, vol. ti [118]:155.7, citing Vasubandhu. See also B, vol. cho [205]:33.5)

15 "Just as space is limitless, boundless, inexhaustible, unobstructed, unproduced, unceasing, unchanging, and provides an environment for all physical things at all times, so the Dharmakāya has the characteristic of the continual establishment of help and happiness for all sentient beings." (W citing Asvabhāva, vol. ti [118]:162.5)

16 Śrāvakas constitute one of the three main types of Buddhist practitioners, the others being Pratyekabuddhas and Bodhisattvas. They "are called Śrāvakas ('Hearers') because they hear Buddha's teachings and proclaim them." (B, vol. cho [205]:47.3) "Their minds are liberated because they are free from desire and their wisdom is liberated because they are free from ignorance." (W, vol. ti [118]:173.1)

"Pratyekabuddhas are always solitary, are interested in peace and do not delight in commotion. They completely achieve their endeavors, and they pass beyond the world upon having understood [dependent origination] by themselves, without teachings from a spiritual guide." In seeking exclusively for their own enlightenment, they do not develop the compassionate actions of the Bodhisattva. (W, vol. thi [119]:14.2. See also COM 146 and WE 102-6)

17 The three knowledges (trividyā) are: clairvoyant knowledge that clearly realizes recollections of past states (pūrvanivāsanānusmṛti-sākṣātkāra-abhijñā); clairvoyant knowledge that clearly realizes transmigration and birth (cyutupapāda-sākṣātkāra-abhijñā); and clairvoyant knowledge that clearly realizes the extinction of contaminations (āsravakṣaya-sākṣātkāra-abhijñā). (W, vol. ti [118]:180.7. See also B, vol. cho [205]:53.6 and Kośa VII:45c-d)

18 The "great state" (mahāvihāra) in which they abide is the Mahāyāna. (B, vol. cho [205]:57.2)

19 The five great fears ('jigs-pa-chen-po-linga, pañca-mahābhaya) are the fears of beginners on the Bodhisattva path: "fear concerning livelihood, fear of disapproval, fear of death, fear of bad transmigrations, and fear that is timidity when addressing assemblies. The

five fears are completely abandoned when one attains the level of surpassing thought (lhag-bsam, adhyāśaya)." (W, vol. ti [118]:195.1)

20 The irreversible stages (phyir-mi-ldog-pa'i-sa, avaivartika-bhūmi) are the eighth through tenth stages, beyond which a Bodhisattva is no longer capable of backsliding. (W, vol. ti [118]:195.3) "When one attains a level on which one is prophesied to omniscience one has progressed to the irreversible stages." (B, vol. cho [205]:60.6)

21 Gambhīrārthasāṃdhanirmocana ('Explainer of the Thought That is the Profound Meaning') is so named because "this Bodhisattva explains by way of the mode of the profound meaning through four [types of] comprehensions." (W, vol. ti [118]:212.2. See p. 181 of this Sūtra for a discussion of how a Bodhisattva comprehends objects.)

Asaṅga quotes chapters one through four of this Sūtra in VS in connection with his discussion of the character of the ultimate (don-dam-pa'i-mtshan-nyid, paramārtha-lakṣaṇa). Asaṅga gives five characteristics of the ultimate: It is (1) inexpressible and (2) non-dual (the main topics of chapter one); (3) it transcends argumentation (the main topic of chapter two); (4) it completely transcends difference and non-difference (the main topic of chapter three); and (5) it is everywhere of one taste (the main topic of chapter four). (VS, P 5539, vol. 'i [111]:47b.6-57b.3)

22 These two terms, "compounded" ('du-byas, saṃskṛta) and "uncompounded" ('du-ma-byas, asaṃskṛta), indicate a common division that includes all phenomena. The compounded is so called because it is produced from the accumulation of many conditions. "Whatever phenomena subsist on the activity of aggregation by causes and conditions are related with such are compounded." (W quoting the Mahāvibhāṣa, vol. ti [118]:217.6)

"Whatever also appears in terms of production, cessation, abiding, and change is 'compounded'. Whatever lacks production, cessation, abiding, and change is 'uncompounded'." (W quoting AS, 218.1) A commentary on the Perfection of Wisdom provides an alternative explanation: "Whatever is apprehendable is 'compounded'. Whatever is not apprehendable is 'uncompounded'.... Whatever is apprehended in terms of signs is 'compounded'; whatever is not apprehended in terms of signs is 'uncompounded'." One scholar equates the compounded with the own-being of the other-dependent (gzhan-gyi-dbang-gi-ngo-bo-nyid, paratantra-svabhāva), and the uncompounded with the own-being of the thoroughly established

(yongs-su-grub-pa'i-ngo-bo-nyid, pariniṣpanna-svabhāva), an explanation W considers to be correct. (W 218.1–219.2)

“The root of compounded phenomena is produced from incorrect thoughts. Due to incorrect thoughts, afflictions are produced. Because of afflictions, karma is produced. Due to karma, ripening [of karma] is generated. Incorrect thoughts arise from apprehending objects. Although these very objects do not truly exist, due to error [ordinary beings] exaggeratedly adhere to them as existent. Because those very objects do not [truly] exist, those incorrect thoughts also do not exist. Since incorrect thoughts do not exist, afflictions are also non-existent. Because afflictions do not exist, karma is also non-existent. Because karma is non-existent, ripening [of karma] is also non-existent. Because even their root is not real, all compounded phenomena are also unreal.” (W 220.2)

“Because even the compounded is not compounded, the uncompounded is also similarly not uncompounded. Because they are imputed in this way, ‘compounded’ and ‘uncompounded’ are inexpressible.” (W 222.3. See also COM 29, 102) The main point in this section is that neither of these designations ultimately reflects the true nature of phenomena. They are merely designated conventionally and have no ultimate validity.

23 An Ārya has attained the path of seeing (mthong-ba'i-lam, darśana-mārga), the third of the Buddhist paths. In Mahāyāna, this means that such a person has had direct experience of śūnyatā. All beings below this level of attainment are referred to as ordinary beings (so-so'i-skyes-bu, pṛthagjana). “‘Wisdom’ refers to the wisdom of śamatha and vipaśyanā that observes integrated doctrines; this is because it does not have various aspects. ‘Vision’ is the wisdom of śamatha and vipaśyanā that observes unintegrated doctrines; this is because it has various aspects.” (B, vol. cho [205]: 76.4. See also pp. 161–65 of this Sūtra for a detailed discussion of “integrated” and “unintegrated” doctrines.)

24 In the analogy of the magician’s illusion, the magician is compared to the basis-consciousness (kun-gzhi-rnam-par-shes-pa, ālaya-vijñāna), which from beginningless time has created things that are unreal. The magician’s skillful assistants are compared to the seven collections of consciousness, which are subordinate to the basis-consciousness. The sticks and stones that serve as the basis of the magician’s illusory creations are compared to the seeds (sa-bon,

bīja) in the basis-consciousness. The jewels and horses that the audience perceives are like fruits (*'bras-bu, phala*). (W, vol. ti [118]: 238.3, 239.3) This analogy illustrates the nature of the phenomena of ordinary existence, which is cognition-only. (B, vol. cho [205]:82.2. See also pp. 155 and 342, note 11 of this *Sūtra*)

25 This verse "indicates the faults of elaborations." (W, vol. ti [118]: 256.1) The statement that they "abide in duality" refers to (the dichotomy of) the compounded and the uncompounded. W's discussion focuses on elaborations of speech (*smra-ba'i-spros-pa, vāda-prapañca*), which he divides into eight types of conceptions of the unreal. He adds: "Because children are obscured due to differentiating in terms of duality and due to bewilderment with respect to inexpressible objects of activity, they greatly delight in and exaggeratedly adhere to the two types of phenomena—compounded and uncompounded—and to the eight types of elaborations."

W then cites YB: "Because children do not thoroughly understand suchness in that way, on this basis the eight [types of] conceptions arise, whereby the three [types of] phenomena arise and all the worlds of sentient beings and environments are produced. The first of the eight conceptions is conception of own-being: This [refers to] any differentiations of the specific own-beings of all phenomena and conceptions of 'form' and so forth. The second [type] is conception of attributes: This [includes] conceptions [such as], 'This is demonstrable'; 'This is not demonstrable' with respect to those very things that are nominally designated as form and so forth. The third [type] is conception that apprehends wholeness: [conceptions] apprehending self, sentient beings, houses, armies, forests, etc. with respect to those very things that are nominally designated as form and so forth. The fourth [type] is the conception that thinks 'I'. The fifth [type] is the conception that thinks 'mine': [conceptions] apprehending phenomena that are associated with contamination and that are associated with appropriation as 'I' and 'mine'. The sixth [type] is conception of the pleasant. The seventh [type] is conception of the unpleasant. The eighth [type] is conception that is reversed from those two. [The last three] respectively are explained as being 'conceptions arising from things that are beautiful, non-beautiful, and neither of those'."

Hsüan-tsang describes these eight types of conceptions as "undefiled and neutral fruitions that have the nature of knowledges

that one is born with. In another way, they have a nature that is conceptual and analytical. With respect to the phrase, 'give rise to three [types of] phenomena': The first three conceptions produce the bases of elaborations of conceptuality and the things that are objects of observation of the six sense powers and the six objects [of their corresponding senses]. The middle two conceptions produce the view of true personhood ('jig-tshogs-la-lta-ba, satkāya-dṛṣṭi) and the pride of thinking 'mine'. The last three respectively produce desire, hatred, and delusion. Because the basis and the object of observation of the sense powers serve as supports they generate the view of true personhood and the pride of thinking 'mine'; and because the view of true personhood and the pride of thinking 'mine' serve as supports one generates desire, hatred, and delusion. Therefore, you should know that the factors of the workings of all the worlds of sentient beings and environments are entirely indicated by these three phenomena." (W quoting Hsüan-tsang, 257.1)

Notes to Chapter Two

1 This Bodhisattva is named Dharmodgata ('Elevated [Through Doctrine]') "because sentient beings vastly increase roots of virtue through [his] teaching doctrines in accordance with their interests." (W, vol. ti [118]:266.4, citing a commentary on the Perfection of Wisdom)

2 Tīrthika (mu-stegs-pa) refers to non-Buddhist schools in general. Five faults prevent Tīrthikas from understanding the ultimate: the fault of being opinionated (kun-tu-tshol-ba'i-nyes-pa), the fault of conceit (mngon-pa'i-nga-rgyal-gyi-nyes-pa), the fault of exaggerated adherence (mngon-par-zhen-pa'i-nyes-pa), the fault of imputation ('dogs-pa'i-nyes-pa), and the fault of argumentativeness (rtsod-pa'i-nyes-pa). (B, vol. cho [205]:89.5)

3 The "ultimate" is that which is uncompounded, lacks production and cessation, and is an object of observation for purification of obstructions. Vasubandhu divides the ultimate into three types: objective ultimate (don-don-dam-pa, artha-paramārtha), e.g., suchness (de-bzhin-nyid, tathatā); attainment ultimate (thob-pa-don-dam-pa, prāpti-paramārtha), e.g., nirvāṇa (mya-ngan-las-'das-pa); and practice ultimate (sgrub-pa-don-dam-pa, pratipatti-paramārtha), e.g., a path (lam, mārga). (MV 236–37 [III.11a]. See also EG 47.14 and DLG 47.6)

4 "Through observing the object of suchness with an Ārya's non-conceptual exalted wisdom, [Āryas] manifestly realize their own internal nature." (W, vol. ti [118]:278.4)

5 "[This passage from the Sūtra] indicates that due to the faults of positing—in dependence upon conventions such as seeing and so forth—that living beings and so forth exist, one does not understand the ultimate. [The phrase,] 'in dependence upon conventions such as seeing and so forth' indicates that in dependence upon conventions of seeing, hearing, differentiating distinctions, and consciousness, one posits selves, sentient beings, souls, and persons and so forth as existent due to apprehending [them] as enjoyers and agents. Due to positing [them] as selves one does not understand the ultimate; therefore, this is the fault of positing." (B, vol. cho [205]:91.6)

"Moreover, Dharmodgata, I explain that suchness is the complete elimination of four types of things: seeing, hearing, differentiating distinctions, and consciousness. But conceptuality and analysis arise within observing these four things." (W quoting the Tshig-nges-par-'grel-pa'i-mdo, vol. ti [118]:290.5)

6 "The following five examples are given because there are five types of orientation: limited orientation (sel-bar-mos-pa); orientation toward desire ('dod-pa-la-mos-pa); orientation toward discursiveness (rnam-par-rtog-pa-la-mos-pa); orientation toward conventions (tha-snyad-la-mos-pa); and orientation toward apprehending [the transitory collection of aggregates] as an 'I' and as 'mine' (bdag-gir-'dzin-pa-la-mos-pa)." Each example is posited in terms of a particular type of orientation. (B, vol. cho [205]:93.3)

Regarding the first example, W states: "Just as those persons who partake only of bitter tastes are unable to imagine, infer, or appreciate the taste of honey, so also householders, who abide in cyclic existence for a long time and always partake of the taste of worldly agitation and coarse sufferings, are unable to imagine, infer, or appreciate the very auspicious taste of pure behavior or the bliss of renunciation." (W, vol. ti [118]:307.2)

7 [Belief in] true personhood refers to the aggregates (phung-po, skandha) that we ordinarily view as a real 'I' and 'mine'. (COM 1-22. See also ME 258-59) The nirvāṇa referred to is "the element of a nirvāṇa without remaining aggregates." (B, vol. cho [205]:94.7)

8 This is one of the nine divisions of the world in traditional Indian cosmology. The inhabitants of this country of eternal beatitude are said to have a lifespan of 1,000 years, to be naturally virtuous, and to lead exceptionally pleasant lives. (See VM VII:44; Kośa III:78)

Notes to Chapter Three

1 "Because his correct exalted wisdom and exalted wisdom of subsequent attainment are uncontaminated virtues and free from affliction, he is called Suviśuddhamati ('Very Pure Intelligence')." (W, vol. ti [118]:316.6)

2 The stage of engagement through conviction (*mos-pas-spyod-pa'i-sa*, *adhimukti-caryā-bhūmi*) encompasses the first two paths—the path of accumulation (*tshogs-lam*, *sambhāra-mārga*) and the path of preparation (*sbyor-lam*, *prayoga-mārga*), in which one's practice is motivated by desire to emulate the exalted states of beings on the higher stages. (Geshe Sangay Samdrup [Georges Dreyfus], oral commentary)

"Since they do not directly realize suchness, in dependence on belief, [Bodhisattvas on this stage] engage in their practices through effort." (W, vol. ti [118]:321.6) They are prevented from understanding the ultimate because of: "obscurations with respect to imputations (*gdags-pa-la-shin-tu-rmongs-pa*) and obscurations with respect to reasoning (*rigs-pa-la-shin-tu-rmongs-pa*)." (B, vol. cho [205]:98.5)

3 They are "childish" (*byis-pa*, *bāla*) because of having ignorant natures (*ma-rig-pa'i-bdag-nyid*). They are "obscured" (*rmongs-pa*) because they are distinguished by their ignorance (*ma-rig-pa-las-rnam-par-'byed-pa*). They are "unclear" (*mi-gsal-ba*) because they still have not attained the faculty of knowing all of the unknown. They are "unskilled" (*mi-mkhas-pa*) because they still have not attained the faculty of omniscience. They are "not properly oriented" (*tshul-bzhin-ma-lags-pa*) because they still have not attained faculties endowed with omniscience. "Therefore, they have not directly realized the mode of ultimate suchness that is a character which is neither one nor different." (W, vol. ti [118]:325.4. See also Bh 11)

4 In AS (COM 8), Aśaṅga indicates that the bonds of errant tendencies (*gnas-ngan-len-gyi'-ching-ba*, *dauṣṭhulya-bandhana*) are certain

obstructions of body (lus-sgrib, kāyāvaraṇa) and of mind (yid-sgrib, manas-āvaraṇa). Some dGe-lugs-pa writers add a third type, obstructions of speech (ngag-sgrib, vāg-āvaraṇa).

These errant tendencies are the subtle motivations toward non-virtuous actions that remain after the passions motivating one to perform them have been overcome. An example of an obstruction of body is seeing a monkey and beginning to jump up and down like a monkey. An example of an obstruction of speech is being verbally abusive to a passer-by, or speaking profanity, but without any harmful intent. (Geshe Sangyay Samdrup, oral commentary)

In SB, Asaṅga writes: "What are the errant tendencies of body and mind that are purified? The arisings of errant tendencies of body and mind [that arise] from physical hardship and physical tiredness are purified through analysis by way of other modes of behavior. And the arisings of errant tendencies of body and mind [that arise] from too much conceptuality and too much analysis are purified through the method of internal mental calm abiding; or they are purified naturally. And the arisings of errant tendencies of body and mind [that arise] from the mind's having been withdrawn and the mind's having become slack due to the entanglements of obscuration and sleepiness are purified through higher wisdom that differentiates phenomena and through very pure mental contemplation; or they are purified naturally. The errant tendencies of body and mind of the class of afflictions from which one has not separated and to which one is always connected due to not abandoning the afflictions are purified through having cultivated a correct path." (NE 4036, vol. dzi:100b.1)

In VS, Asaṅga writes: "In brief, with respect to errant tendencies there are two types: errant tendencies that are contaminated (zag-pa'i-gnas-ngan-len, āsrava-dauṣṭhulya) and errant tendencies that are associated with contamination (zag-pa-dang-bcas-pa'i-gnas-ngan-len, sāsrava-dauṣṭhulya). Because errant tendencies that are contaminated are afflictions that are to be abandoned by [a path of] meditation, Arhats are free from all of them. Moreover, these are simply states that are bad due to their mode of unserviceability with respect to the bodily consciousness as well as latencies (bag-la-nyal, anuśaya). With respect to errant tendencies that are associated with contamination, even though one has eliminated their latencies, they are produced by former contamination and are polluted by contamination. Due to such a mode of unserviceability, they are

cases of abiding in a bad way that are naturally very subtle and very miniscule. Errant tendencies that are associated with contamination are 'predispositions of afflictions' (nyon-mongs-pa'i-bag-chags, kleśa-vāsanā). Moreover, Arhats and Pratyekabuddhas have not abandoned them; only Tathāgatas have abandoned them. The complete elimination of these predispositions is an 'unshared quality of Buddhas' (sangs-rgyas-kyi-chos-ma'dres-pa, aṇḍika-buddhadharma)." (NE 4038, vol. zhi:119b.3. See also W, vol. ti [118]:333-37)

5 In this analogy the conch represents the character of compounded phenomena and whiteness represents ultimate truth because it pervades the whole nature of the form [of the conch]. (W, vol. ti [118]:347.3) "The ultimate and conventional exist in mutual dependence" [just as the whiteness of the conch and the conch exist in mutual dependence]. (W 352.1)

6 The vīṇā is a seven-stringed Indian instrument similar to a lute.

7 The agaru tree is Amyris agallocha.

8 Myrobalan arjuna is an important medicinal plant.

Notes to Chapter Four

1 Subhūti, a Śrāvaka, is the main questioner in many Perfection of Wisdom Sūtras, and is praised by the Buddha as the foremost of his disciples in understanding emptiness. (See W, vol. ti [118]:359.5)

2 Conceit (mngon-pa'i-nga-rgyal, abhimāna) is one of seven types of pride. It leads one to imagine that one has attained advanced spiritual states. (Kośa V:10a) Those who are overcome by conceit are ordinary beings, while those who are not are Āryas. (W, vol. ti [118]:360.6, citing Paramārtha's Tshig-nges-par-'grel-pa'i-mdo)

There are three kinds of conceit: conceit of apprehended objects (gzung-ba'i-mngon-pa'i-nga-rgyal); conceit of the apprehending subject ('dzin-pa'i-mngon-pa'i-nga-rgyal); and the conceit of thoroughly differentiating character (mtshan-nyid-rab-tu-dbye-ba'i-mngon-pa'i-nga-rgyal). (B, vol. cho [205]:106.3)

3 These are the five aggregates (phung-po, skandha), the constituents of all phenomena and the basis on which we impute 'I' and 'mine': form (gzugs, rūpa); feeling (tshor-ba, vedanā); discrimination

('du-shes, saṃjñā); compositional factors ('du-byed, saṃskāra); and consciousness (rnam-par-shes-pa, vijñāna). (See VM XIV:33-184, Kośa I:9a-22d, and WE 133-60)

“Observing the signs of the aggregates’ is done from the point of view of thoroughly analyzing their own signs. ‘Observing the arising of the aggregates’ and ‘observing the disintegration of the aggregates’ are done from the point of view of general characteristics and thorough investigation. These two indicate the aspects of true sources and true sufferings of the aggregates. ‘Observing the cessation of the aggregates’ refers to true cessations, and ‘observing the actualization of the cessation of the aggregates’ refers to true paths.” (B, vol. cho [205]:109.4)

4 The sense spheres (skye-mched, āyatana) are the abodes of perception. There is a sixfold enumeration and a twelvefold enumeration of these. W (vol. ti [118]:382.6) indicates that the twelvefold division is being referred to here; see also Kośa I:14a-b, 24; VM XV: 1-16; and WE 170-74. The twelvefold division is:

form (gzugs, rūpa)
sound (sgra, śabda)
smell (dri, gandha)
taste (ro, rasa)
tangible object (reg-bya, sparśa)
phenomenon (chos, dharma)
eye sense power (mig-gi-dbang-po, cakṣur-indriya)
ear sense power (rna-ba'i-dbang-po, śrotrendriya)
nose sense power (sna'i-dbang-po, ghrāṇendriya)
tongue sense power (lce'i-dbang-po, jihvendriya)
body sense power (lus-kyi-dbang-po, kāyendriya)
mind sense power (yid-kyi-dbang-po, mano-indriya).

The twelve links of dependent origination (rten-cing-'brel-bar-'byung-ba, pratītya-samutpāda) are (Kośa III:20a-37b and WE 176-90):

ignorance (ma-rig-pa, avidyā)
karmic propensities ('du-byed, saṃskāra)
consciousness (rnam-par-shes-pa, vijñāna)
name and form (ming-dang-gzugs, nāma-rūpa)
six senses (skye-mched-drug, ṣaḍāyatana)
contact (reg-pa, sparśa)
feeling (tshor-ba, vedanā)
craving (sred-pa, tṛṣṇā)

grasping (len-pa, upādāna)
existence (srid-pa, bhava)
birth (skye-ba, jāti)
old age and death (rga-shi, jarā-maraṇa).

The four sustenances (zas, āhāra) are: material sustenance (khams-kyi-zas, kavaḍikārāhāra), which is necessary for sustaining the body; sustenance of touch (reg-pa'i-zas, sparsāhāra), which is the sense of mental satisfaction that one experiences when a desire is fulfilled; sustenance of intention ([yid-la]-sems-pa'i-zas, manaḥsaṁcetanāhāra), which is an action (las, karma) that impels the next lifetime; and sustenance of consciousness (rnam-shes-kyi-zas, vijñānāhāra). (Kośa III:38d-41) "Just as the action that impels a future lifetime is called a sustenance, so the consciousness that is imprinted with that action and which will at the time of the effect of that action in the future life be imprinted with other karmas is called a nourisher or sustenance." (Geshe Gendun Lodrö, unpubl. ms., tr. Jeffrey Hopkins. See also VM XI:1-3; W, vol. ti [118]:383.2; and WE 217-18)

5 The four truths (bden-pa, satya) are: the truth of suffering (sdug-bsngal-bden-pa, duḥkha-satya); the truth of the origin of suffering (kun-'byung-bden-pa, samudaya-satya); the truth of the cessation of suffering ('gog-bden-pa, nirodha-satya); and the truth of the eightfold path that overcomes suffering (lam-bden-pa, mārga-satya). (See W, vol. ti [118]:383.5-385.2, and WE 68-76)

6 In the Kośa (I:28a-48d), there are three divisions of constituents (khams, dhātu): (1) a sixfold division: earth, water, fire, air, space, and consciousness; (2) an eighteenfold division: the six senses, their six objects, and the six consciousnesses that arise from them; and (3) a threefold division: form reālm, formless realm, and desire realm.

W identifies both the "various" and "manifold" constituents as the eighteen constituents. (vol. ti [118]:385.5, 549.1) Alternately: "The constituents of sentient beings, ranging up to their 80,000 modes of behavior—through modes distinguished as the lineages of Śrāvakas, Pratyekabuddhas, and Tathāgatas and desire and so forth—are called 'various'. . . . With respect to 'observing manifold constituents': If one broadly classifies these various constituents, there are four types: the naturally abiding constituent; the constituent arisen from previous familiarization; the constituent that is suitable as an

object of purification. There are also limitless other divisions with respect to each of these." (B, vol. cho [205]:110.2)

EG (p. 6.2) states that the "various constituents" are the eighteen constituents. EG (p. 6.2-.4) and GR (p. 9.4) identify the "manifold constituents" as the six: earth, water, fire, air, space, and consciousness. Tsong-kha-pa states that, although some commentaries explain the "various constituents" and "manifold constituents" differently, he has chosen to explain them in this way in accordance with the seventh chapter of the *Samdhinirmocana Sūtra*, which in many ways parallels this chapter. According to G (86.14-89.10), the reason the Buddha spoke of both eighteen and six constituents is that the eighteen are all-inclusive, but the six are useful in establishing selflessness. He further states (86.14) that the Buddha taught (*Dhātubahuka-sūtra*, NE 297) that the eighteen constituents and the six constituents are established through their own character as bases of conception of the thought consciousness apprehending them.

7 The four mindful establishments (*dran-pa-nye-bar-bzhag-pa*, *smṛtyupasthāna*) are: establishment in mindfulness of body (*lus*, *kāya*), feelings (*tshor-ba*, *vedanā*), mind (*sems*, *citta*), and phenomena (*chos*, *dharma*). They "are based on *prajña*, the discernment of *dharma*s." (WE 274. See also *Kośa* VI:14-16, ME 205, and COM 118, 169)

They are called mindful establishments "because wisdom is thoroughly held through the power of mindfulness; thus it is caused to abide continuously." Due to the power of wisdom one gains from cultivating these, mindfulness is able to remain fixed on its objects. (W, vol. ti [118]:387.7, citing *bsTan-bcos-yang-dag-pa'i-rig-pa*)

There are four "antidotes to the discordances": the antidote of the basis (*gzhi'i-gnyen-po*, *ādhāra-pratipakṣa*); the antidote of removal (*thag-sring-ba'i-gnyen-po*, *dūrībhāva-pratipakṣa*); the antidote of abandonment (*spong-ba'i-gnyen-po*, *prahāṇa-pratipakṣa*); and the antidote of eradication (*rnam-par-sun-'byin-pa'i-gnyen-po*, *vidūṣaṇā-pratipakṣa*). (COM 116. See also *Kośa* V:61a-c) "Increasing and extending" means increasing these antidotes through the power of familiarity and extending them limitlessly." (A 55.2)

8 The four correct abandonings (*yang-dag-par-spong-ba*, *samyak-prahāṇa*) are:

abandoning non-virtuous phenomena already generated (*sdig-pa-mi-dge-ba'i-chos-skyes-pa-rnams-yongs-su-spang-pa*, *utpannākuśala-dharmaprahāṇa*)

not producing non-virtuous phenomena not yet generated (sdig-pa-mi-dge-ba'i-chos-ma-skyes-pa-rnams-mi-skyed-pa, anutpannākūśala-dharmāropaṇa)

increasing virtuous phenomena already generated (dge-ba'i-chos-skyes-pa-rnams-'phel-ba, utpanna-kūśala-dharmavṛddhi)

producing virtuous phenomena not yet generated (dge-ba'i-chos-ma-skyes-pa-rnams-bskyed-pa, anutpanna-kūśala-dharma-ropaṇa). (COM 120. See also WE 278-80, 322)

The opposite of the correct abandonings is laziness. (A 55.2-3)

The four bases of magical abilities (rdzu-'phrul-gyi-rkang-pa, ṛddhipāda) are: aspiration ('dun-pa, chanda); effort (brtson-'grus, vīrya); mental attention (sems, citta); and analytical samādhi (dpyod-pa'i-ting-nge-'dzin, mīmāṃsā-samādhi). W cites the Kośa, which states that they are "bases" "because they serve as bases of extraordinary qualities." (vol. ti [118]:395.1) These "bases" are attained on the great path of accumulation (ME 206) and their discordant factor is distraction. (A 55.2-3. See also VM XII, Kośa VI:69d-c, and WE 278-79)

Both the powers and forces are fivefold: faith (dad-pa, śraddhā); effort (brtson-'grus, vīrya); mindfulness (dran-pa, smṛti); samādhi (ting-nge-'dzin); and wisdom (shes-rab, prajñā). The powers are attained on the levels of heat and peak of the path of preparation. (ME 206) The discordant factor of the powers is non-interest; that of the forces is little strength of mindfulness and introspection. (A 55.2-3. See Kośa VI:68b-70, and WE 279-80, 292, 323)

The seven branches of enlightenment (byang-chub-kyi-yan-lag-bdun, sapta-bodhyaṅga) are: mindfulness (dran-pa, smṛti); discrimination of phenomena (chos-rnam-par-'byed-pa, dharma-vicaya); effort (brtson-'grus, vīrya); joy (dga'-ba, prīti); pliancy (shin-tu-sbyangs-pa, praśrabdhi); samādhi (ting-nge-'dzin); and equanimity (btang-snyoms, upekṣā). (W, vol. ti [118]:398.1) These are attained with the path of seeing. (ME 206. See Kośa VI:68b-70 and WE 283)

The eight branches of the path of Āryas ('phags-pa'i-lam-yan-lag-brgyad-pa, āryaṣṭāṅgamārga) are:

correct views (yang-dag-pa'i-lta-ba, samyag-dṛṣṭi)

correct realization (yang-dag-pa'i-rtog-pa, samyak-saṃkalpa)

correct speech (yang-dag-pa'i-ngag, samyag-vāk)

correct aims of action (yang-dag-pa'i-las-kyi-mtha', samyak-karmānta)

correct livelihood (yang-dag-pa'i-'tsho-ba, samyag-ājīva)

correct effort (yang-dag-pa'i-rtsol-ba, samyag-vyāyāma)

correct mindfulness (yang-dag-pa'i-dran-pa, samyak-smṛti)
correct samādhi (yang-dag-pa'i-ting-nge-'dzin, samyak-samādhi).
(W, vol. ti [118]:399.7)

They are attained with the path of meditation. (ME 206. See W 400.1 for a description of these, and WE 75-6, 324-25)

9 "This indicates that thoroughly established suchness, the ultimate, the selflessness of phenomena is everywhere of one taste in the sense of being free from distinctions with respect to all phenomena that are apprehended objects, phenomena that are apprehending subjects, and phenomena that are of thoroughly differentiated characters." (B, vol. cho [205]:111.5. See also Buddhabhūmi-sūtra [ed. Kyoo Nishio, Tokyo: Kokusho Kankokai, 1982, II.2.1])

"The central theme of this chapter is this statement that [the ultimate] is of a character that is everywhere of one taste (ro-gcig-pa'i-mtshan-nyid, ekarasa-lakṣaṇa). This teaching is divided into four parts (B 105.2):

positing the character of conceit (mngon-pa'i-nga-rgyal-gyi-mtshan-nyid-rnam-par-gzhag-pa);

positing the character of the antidotes to conceit (mngon-pa'i-nga-rgyal-gyi-gnyen-po'i-mtshan-nyid-rnam-par-gzhag-pa);

positing the character of examples of those (de-dag-gi-dpe'i-mtshan-nyid-rnam-par-gzhag-pa);

positing the character that subsumes the phenomena that are those (de-dag-gi-dngos-po-bsdus-pa'i-mtshan-nyid-rnam-par-gzhag-pa)."

In this translation of the Sūtra, the first part begins on p. 53 and ends on p. 59, paragraph 2. The second part begins on p. 59, paragraph 3, and ends on p. 63, paragraph 3. The third part begins on p. 63, paragraph 4 and ends on p. 65, paragraph 1. The fourth part begins on p. 65, paragraph 2 and ends with the conclusion of the chapter.

10 "An object of observation for purification has three aspects: It is permanently changeless (rtag-tu-rnam-par-gyur-ba-med); it has a nature of virtue and happiness (dge-dang-bde-ba'i-ngo-bo-nyid); and it manifestly accomplishes everything (thams-cad-mngon-par-grub-par-gyur). (W, vol. ti [118]:406.2, citing the bsTan-bcos-rnam-par-bshad-pa'i-tshig-le'ur-byas-pa)

11 "The suchness that is of one taste is without oneness in the past from the beginning; therefore [the Sūtra says,] 'permanent, perma-

nent time'. It is without oneness in the future; therefore [the Sūtra says,] 'everlasting, everlasting time'." (W, vol ti [118]:416.5) "Because it abides as the reality (chos-nyid) of phenomena in permanent, permanent time and in everlasting, everlasting time, it is uncompounded." (W 567.6) W mentions that someone else equates "permanent, permanent time" with "former, former time." (W 525.6. See also EG 17.10 and 17.18)

12 "With respect to [the example of] space, since it is of a character that is an absence of the own-being of forms, that very absence of the own-being of those is not distinguished with respect to difference in terms of difference from those. The ultimate is also like that." (B, vol. cho [205]:117.6)

Notes to Chapter Five

1 "Because he has no ignorance concerning the various forms of discourse related to the scriptures and commentaries of renunciates and of householders, he is called Viśālamati ('Extensive Intelligence')." (W quoting a Perfection of Wisdom commentary, vol. ti [118]:422.7) This Bodhisattva is so named "because the objects of activity of [his] wisdom are measureless and limitless." (W 423.1, quoting YB)

This entire chapter is quoted in VS (P 5539, vol. 'i [111]:57b.4–60a.1). Asaṅga states that while the first four chapters concern the characteristics of the ultimate, this chapter concerns the character of mind. According to Asaṅga the function of mind is to act as a support for name and form (nāma-rūpa).

2 In this chapter "mind" (sems, citta) refers to the basis-consciousness (kun-gzhi-rnam-par-shes-pa, ālaya-vijñāna). (B, vol. cho [205]:121.3) The basis-consciousness should be equated with mind "because, having collected the seeds of phenomena, it gives rise to phenomena." (W, vol. ti [118]:421.4) "Thought" (yid, manas) refers to (1) afflicted sentience (nyon-mongs-pa-can-gyi-yid, klišṭa-manas), the seventh consciousness in the Yogācāra system, and (2) "a just-ceased consciousness and a consciousness that has been transformed." "Consciousness" (rnam-par-shes-pa, vijñāna) refers to the six collections of operating consciousnesses (i.e., eye-consciousness, ear-consciousness, etc.). (B 121.3. See also W 421.5 and KY 16b.1)

3 The six kinds of beings are: hell beings (dmyal-ba, nāraka); hungry ghosts (yi-dwags, preta); animals (dud-'gro, tiryak); humans (mi, manuṣya); demigods (lha-ma-yin, asura); and gods (lha, deva). (See Kośa III:4a-b; W, vol. ti [118]:447.3–449.7; and WE 208–17. For a detailed discussion of these types of birth see W, vol. ti [118]:449.7–551.7.)

4 These two types of appropriation are “two causes that operate in association with the basis-consciousness and are linked with it. The two types of internal appropriation are: appropriation of physical sense powers associated with a support and appropriation of predispositions to exaggeratedly apprehending imputational natures. Regarding the ‘appropriation of physical sense powers associated with a support’, those supports of physical sense powers are whatever is counted as the physical aggregates that are apprehended. The ‘physical sense powers’ are the five physical sense powers.” (B, vol. cho [205]:136.6. See also W 457.1–462.2)

“On the occasion of taking birth in those transmigrations, initially when making the transition between lives, the mind that is a consciousness [containing] all seeds ripens.” (W, vol. ti [118]:452.3) The mind forms because “at that time, in terms of birthplace, the aspect of the form that is the combination of the semen and blood of father and mother and the basis-consciousness move into a womb and become an establishment and abiding.” The mind “develops” “due to continuous operation subsequent to that.” Increase takes place “at the time of the arising of the operating consciousness.” The mind expands “due to the infusion of predispositions by those operating consciousnesses.” (B, vol. cho [205]:138.5)

At the beginning of a new life, a being has the karmic latencies of past lives (referred to as seeds), which begin to manifest themselves in the new continuum. They then grow and develop, and as the new life progresses, they in turn lead to production of new predispositions, and so the process continues and maintains itself.

In a previous discussion of the basis-consciousness, W (441.3) comments: “Due to the basis-consciousness, through the force of maintaining the three types of predispositions, the continuity of the gap between lives is not cut off.” According to VJ (478–80), the three types of predispositions are: (1) predispositions of verbalization (mngon-par-brjod-pa'i-bag-chags, abhilāpya-vāsanā); (2) predispositions of apprehending a self (bdag-du-'dzin-pa'i-bag-chags, ātmagrāha-vāsanā); and (3) predispositions of the limbs of cyclic

existence ('khor-ba'i-yan-lag-bag-chags, saṃsārāṅga-vāsanā). The first type includes seeds that predispose a person to make differentiations regarding individual compounded phenomena. These are of two types: manifest expressions that define meanings, which are expressions of vocal differentiation with respect to meanings; and manifest expressions that define objects, which are phenomena of minds and mental factors that understand objects. The second type includes seeds that predispose one to incorrectly conceive 'I' and 'mine'. These are also of two types: innate conceptions of self, which are conceptions of 'I' and 'mine' that are objects to be abandoned by a path of meditation; and the imputational conception of 'I', which is a conception of 'I' and 'mine' that is an object to be abandoned by a path of seeing. Due to these two conceptions, sentient beings make distinctions of 'self' and 'other'. The third type of predisposition includes seeds that induce fruition of the three realms of existence. These are also of two types: virtues associated with contamination, which are any actions that induce desirable effects; and non-virtues, which are any actions that induce undesirable effects.

5 It is not twofold because in the formless realm physical sense powers are absent, although predispositions for them are present. (See W, vol. ti [118]:462.2; Kośa III:3a-d, XIII:3c-d; JBW 496-502)

6 "Because it thoroughly holds the seeds of phenomena, thoroughly holds the bases of physical sense powers, and thoroughly holds the connection between lives, it is called the 'appropriating consciousness'." (W citing VJ, vol. ti [118]:462.7. See also JBW 10, 57)

"Why is it called the 'appropriating consciousness'? Because it is the cause of all the physical sense powers and is the support that appropriates all bodies. As long as one is still alive, it holds the five physical sense powers such that they do not disintegrate. Also, when the connection between lives is made, because it appropriates rebirth, the body is appropriated." (S, vol. I, I:5)

7 The existence of the basis-consciousness is established both through reasonings based on the necessity of its existence for continuity and by citations from scriptures that assert its existence (such as the Saṃdhinirmocana Sūtra and the Laṅkāvatāra Sūtra). (See B, vol. cho [205]:125.1-128.1 and W, vol. ti [118]:463.2-466.7, where the functions of the basis-consciousness are described in detail; and Jina-putra's Abhidharmasamuccaya-bhāṣya [P 5554, vol. shi [113]:12a.3-.6], for eight reasonings establishing its existence.)

"If the basis-consciousness did not exist, appropriation of a body would be impossible; initial operation [of consciousness] would be impossible; clear operation [of consciousness] would be impossible; seeds would be impossible; karma would be impossible; bodily feelings would be impossible; meditative absorptions in which mind is absent would be impossible; and transmigration of consciousness would be impossible." (B, vol. cho [205]:124.6)

8 This passage refers to the fanciful etymology of the Sanskrit word *citta* from the verbal root \sqrt{ci} , which means 'to accumulate'. Thus, *citta* is what 'accumulates' the predispositions. The basis-consciousness has seeds within it that ripen into eye-consciousnesses. When these become activated, an eye-consciousness results. (KJ 4.12-6.9 and KY 5a, 11b. See also JBW 111-19, 138, 409-20)

9 In other words, this reason alone is not sufficient for Bodhisattvas to merit the designation: "wise with respect to the secrets of mind, thought, and consciousness." They must also directly realize the ultimate in order to be worthy of this designation.

10 "It is deep because it is difficult for its depth to be fathomed by the intelligence even of the wise of the world. It is subtle because it is difficult to know even for Śrāvakas. Therefore, [Buddha] does not teach this [basis]-consciousness to Śrāvakas and the like, because they do not seek extremely subtle omniscience. With respect to [the phrase,] 'all its seeds flowing like a river': Because it continues from one moment to another, it flows without its continuum being cut off, like a river. With respect to [the phrase,] 'I have not taught this to children': It is not revealed to those having a view of self. This is because those who conceive of a self would apprehend [the appropriating consciousness] as being a unitary, unchanging 'self' that exists as long as cyclic existence lasts." (W, vol. ti [118]:489.6, citing Asvabhāva's commentary on MS)

Notes to Chapter Six

1 "With respect to [the name] Guṇākara ('Source of Qualities'): Because [he] has accumulated the causes of [good] qualities for immeasurable eons, this is a case of a designation of a name from a causal point of view. Because [he] has accumulated both types of

bases of [good] qualities—the collections of merit and wisdom—he is [called] Guṇākara.” (W, vol. ti [118]:493.5)

This entire chapter is quoted by Asaṅga in VS (P 5539, vol. ‘i [111]: 60a.2–62b.2). He states that the subject of this chapter is the character of phenomena (chos-rnams-kyi-mtshan-nyid, dharma-lakṣaṇa).

2 “Why is it called ‘imputational’ (kun-btags, parikalpita)? Because mental consciousness, having the aspects of immeasurable conceptions, just gives rise to error, [it is termed] ‘imputational’. Also because its own character does not truly exist, but is merely perceived conceptually, it is called ‘imputational’.” (W, vol. ti [118]:496.4, citing MS) “‘A character that gives rise to error’ means that it has a character of unreal, erroneous objects of observation. ‘Its own character does not truly exist’ [because] its nature does not truly exist.” (W citing Vasubandhu’s commentary, 496.7)

“The imputational character is a character that is posited in the manner of names and terminology, but is not posited through its own character. Since it is utterly non-existent in terms of both of the two truths, it lacks own-being due to lacking own-being in terms of character.” (B, vol. cho [205]:213.5)

3 “The ‘other-dependent (gzhan-dbang, paratantra) character’ is the own-being of internal and external phenomena that are dependently arisen through the power of other conditions. Because the own-being of things that are apprehended objects and apprehending subjects are produced due to the power of other causes and conditions, it is the ‘other-dependent character’.” (B, vol. cho [205]: 187.7) “The other-dependent character is produced by the power of other conditions but is not [produced] through its nature. Therefore—since it exists merely [like] a magician’s illusions in terms of conventional truths—it is a lack of own-being due to being a lack of own-being in terms of production. Since it does not have ultimate lack of own-being because it is not an object of observation for purification, it is not an ultimate lack of own-being because it is not an ultimate truth. Therefore, it is a lack of own-being, and the thoroughly established character is the ultimate, and the ultimate is distinguished by being the lack of own-being of all phenomena. Because [the thoroughly established character] is both the ultimate truth and a lack of own-being, it is a lack of own-being due to being the ultimate lack of own-being.” (B 213.6. See also pp. 99–105 of this Sūtra)

"Because this exists, that arises" indicates that [effects] arise from conditions unalterably. "Because this is produced, that is produced" indicates that objects are produced from conditions that are impermanent. This is because production of an effect from causes that do not give rise to any phenomenon is not established. The phrase, "due to the condition of ignorance, compositional factors [arise]," indicates that [effects] are produced from conditions that are potencies. Although phenomena are unfluctuating and impermanent, any effect does not arise from any condition. Why is this? Since there are different divisions of potencies of phenomena, it is said that "there are [the links of dependent origination] ranging from the arising of compositional factors due to the power of ignorance up to the arising of old age and death due to the power of birth." "The whole great assemblage of suffering" indicates that there is no beginning or end to the accumulation of suffering. (W, vol. ti [118]: 504-5)

4 "Because [the thoroughly established character] does not change into something else, because it is an object of observation for purification, because it is supreme of all virtuous phenomena, it is called the 'thoroughly established character' in the sense of being supreme." (W quoting MS, vol. ti [118]:499.7) "'Because it does not change into something else' it is not a false phenomenon. It is like a minister who is free from falsity." (W quoting Vasubandhu, 500.1)

"The 'thoroughly established character' is correct knowledge and suchness that are distinguished by having been transformed and by being the suchness of phenomena." (B, vol. cho [205]:187.6)

5 "Clouded vision" (rab-rib, timira) indicates a wide range of visual defects, including occluded or hazy vision, seeing spots or lines in the visual field that may look like a net of hairs, insects, sesame seeds, etc., or perceiving colors incorrectly. (See W, vol. ti [118]:517.4, 518.5; *Viṃśatikā-kārikā-vṛtti* 161, verse 2 and commentary)

6 Mahānīla (mthon-ka-chen-po) is a blue-colored gem.

7 "In that way, through entering into [understanding of] the character of objects that appear in the manner of mental verbalizations, those Bodhisattvas enter into [understanding of] the imputational character. Through entering into [understanding of] cognition-only, they enter into [understanding of] the other-dependent character. How do they enter into [understanding of] the thoroughly established character? They enter after having reversed even concep-

tions of cognition-only." (W, vol. ti [118]:538.1, citing MS) "At that time, since objects of observation and observers are equalized for those Bodhisattvas, the non-conceptual exalted wisdom of equality arises. Therefore, those Bodhisattvas have entered into [understanding of] the thoroughly established character." (W 538.6)

Notes to Chapter Seven

1 Regarding the name of this Bodhisattva, Paramārthasamudgata ('Exalted by the Ultimate'): "The 'ultimate' is the object to be attained, and it is the object of the supreme exalted wisdom. Therefore it is called 'ultimate'. Because the exalted wisdom that is the means of attainment arises from observing the ultimate, he is 'exalted'." (W, vol. ti [118]:544.7) This chapter explains the meaning of the character of lack of own-being of phenomena. (VS, P 5539, vol. 'i [111]:62b.2)

2 Paramārthasamudgata's question implies that the two sets of teachings (the teachings concerning the aggregates and so forth taught in other Sūtras and the teachings concerning lack of own-being and so forth taught in this Sūtra) are mutually contradictory (phan-tshun-'gal-ba). (W, vol. ti [118]:552.4) Paramārthasamudgata is asking the Buddha to clarify the intentions behind his earlier teachings in light of the teachings being given in this text. According to G (74.6-75.13), Paramārthasamudgata is asking this question not for himself, but for the benefit of others who might have such questions.

3 "That suchness which is the object of the exalted wisdom purifying the two obstructions [i.e., the afflictive obstructions and the obstructions to omniscience] is the thoroughly established nature and is the object of observation for purification." (DLG 48.1)

4 "Lack of own-being in the sense of lack of own-being in terms of character should be understood to be an utter non-existence in terms of both conventional and ultimate truths, like a sky-flower. . . . Like a magical apparition, lack of own-being in the sense of lack of own-being in terms of production and ultimate lack of own-being should be understood as existing only as a conventional truth." (B, vol. cho [205]:187.6) "The similarity of imputational natures with a sky-flower is an example of their merely being imputed by thought and is not an example of their not occurring among objects of knowledge." (EG 13.11)

5 Asaṅga states that when the Buddha said that all phenomena are unproduced and so forth, he was “thinking only of lack of own-being in terms of character.” (VS, P 5539, vol. ‘i [111]:18a.8)

6 “‘Peacefulness’ (zhi-ba, sānti) refers to liberation from the afflictive obstructions. ‘Proceeds’ (bgrod-pa, yāna) refers to the path and the fruit: the path of the Śrāvaka vehicle and the fruit of liberation. ‘Solely’ (gcig-pu, eka) refers to not attaining the lineage which achieves the conditions for complete transformation into [the state of] unsurpassable enlightenment at that time, and abiding in the partial liberation and nirvāṇa of the Śrāvaka.” (B, vol. cho [205]: 239.1. See also Bh 14.5)

“Since the causes of unsurpassed, perfect enlightenment are thoroughly ripening sentient beings and ripening the qualities of a Buddha for oneself, those who do not complete those two [activities] lack the causes of that [i.e., enlightenment] at that time. Moreover, this is merely a difference in practice; it does not come from the nature of the mind. Therefore, [Buddha’s] thought is that they are called ‘those who proceed solely towards peacefulness’ as long as they have not attained the lineage of transformation into unsurpassed enlightenment and do not exert themselves.” (B 240.3)

7 “Because Śrāvakas [who evolve with respect to enlightenment] immediately thereafter abide on the eighth Bodhisattva stage, Śrāvakas are also indicated as being among the enumeration of Bodhisattvas.” (B, vol. cho [205]:241.2) “When [Śrāvakas] become non-learners [when they reach the path of no more learning of the Śrāvaka vehicle], they turn away from the aspirations of Śrāvakas, and through the Tathāgatas’ encouragement they apply themselves to unsurpassed, complete, perfect enlightenment with a body that has a remainder of aggregates [impelled by former contaminated actions and afflictive emotions].” (B 241.3. See also WE 261)

8 “As long as [their enlightenment] is not transformed into unsurpassed enlightenment, they are designated as being of the Śrāvaka lineage.” (B, vol. cho [205]:241.4)

9 The “disciplinary doctrine” (chos’dul-ba, dharma-vinaya) is here understood as “the teaching of the Bhagavan, the Buddha, [which is] endowed with the eight branches of the path of Āryas. Correct views, realization, mindfulness, and samādhi are doctrine. Correct speech, aims of actions, and livelihood are discipline. Correct exertion is

omnipresent. It is 'well taught' since that disciplinary doctrine is explained exceptionally well. It is 'well taught' since it is virtuous in the beginning, virtuous in the middle, and virtuous in the end." (B, vol. cho [205]:242.1) "Because all three scriptural collections [of Vinaya, Sūtra, and Abhidharma] have the capacity to discipline ill deeds, [they are] 'disciplinary'." (W, vol. thi [119]:46.4. See also WE 29-34)

10 "Having ripened their continuums' [means that] although Bodhisattvas on the occasion of having gained the Bodhisattva lineage abide in the lineage and have thoroughly purified obstructions, due to four causes, they are unable to attain unsurpassed, perfect enlightenment. Due to being free from those four causes indicated earlier, [these Bodhisattvas] have 'thoroughly ripened continuums'. . . 'Great conviction' [refers to] conviction in the ability to attain the qualities of a Buddha . . . Thoroughly ripened wisdom [is that which] differentiates doctrines and apprehends the ultimate truth. This is indicated by 'they have completed the great accumulations of merit and wisdom.'" (B, vol. cho [205]:244.2)

11 The Buddha's thought differs from what the actual words of his teaching indicate to beings who do not understand this thought. This point is developed at length in EG, especially 3-29, and DLG, especially 8-36. See also JBW 294-97.

12 This is because they do not seek the definitive meaning and the Mahāyāna but adhere to the literal meaning, thus misunderstanding the teachings. (W, vol. thi [119]:61.7) Because they do not seek scriptures of definitive meaning, but grasp at scriptures of interpretable meaning, they hold their own views to be supreme. (W 62.1)

13 The dGe-lugs-pa tradition, beginning with Tsong-kha-pa, interprets this passage to mean that these beings, whom they identify as Prāsaṅgika-Mādhyamikas, think that no object exists by way of its own-character. Thus they fall into the extreme of nihilism. (See EG 13-14) W states that this passage indicates the faults of exaggerated adherence to literal meanings. (W, vol. thi [119]:62)

14 "They [adopt] the view that all phenomena do not exist' [because] they view the phenomena that lack character, the phenomena of thoroughly afflicted character, and the phenomena of purified character as being equally non-existent. 'They [adopt] the view that character does not exist': They view all imputational char-

acters, other-dependent characters, and thoroughly established characters as equally non-existent. With respect to [the phrase,] 'If other-dependent and thoroughly established characters exist, then the imputational character is also understood': This is because imputation of names and terminology in the manner of own-being and attributes is itself the imputational character. [The phrase,] 'Therefore, they also deprecate all three types of characters' indicates [that they hold] a specific type of belief that arises from little wisdom." (B, vol. cho [205]:252.4)

15 "When dried ginger is put in medicinal powders, they become potent. When one puts these words of lack of own-being and so forth in all Sūtras of interpretable meaning, then one will understand the thoughts [behind] those Sūtras." (W, vol. thi [119]:107.5)

16 Through these examples, Paramārthasamudgata offers four ways of looking at the relation between what the Buddha said in his interpretable teachings and the definitive teachings that state his actual thought. In the first example, the definitive teaching is compared to an ingredient in a medicinal preparation essential to its efficacy. In the second example, the definitive teaching is compared to the background of a painting, which may remain unnoticed, but which provides the basis for the placement of lines and color. In the third example, the definitive teaching is compared to an ingredient in cooking that enhances flavor. In the final example, the definitive teaching is compared to space. Space is all-pervasive, subtle, imperceptible, and generally not noticed, but makes possible the manifestation of physical objects. In the same way, the definitive teaching is said to be subtle, difficult to perceive, and so forth, but is the essence of the explanations given by Buddha in the first two wheels, even when this was not noticed by his audience. (See W, vol. thi [119]:109.2; B, vol. cho [205]:262; and Bh 14–15)

17 "'Surpassable' indicates that there are other Sūtras of definitive meaning that are higher. [They] 'provide an opportunity' [for refutation because they] provide an opportunity for other disputants to find fault with respect to the literal reading of the explicit teaching. . . . [The first wheel] serves as a basis for controversy in that there is a basis for dispute because the Teacher did not differentiate individually in terms of the three characters whether they do or do not exist by way of their own character." (DLG, 29.4)

Notes to Chapter Eight

1 Maitreya is the future Buddha, who presently resides in Tuṣita in preparation for his last rebirth as a fully actualized Buddha. He is called Maitreya ('Love') "because his nature is endowed with love and compassion." (W, vol. thi [119]:174.2)

2 The main topic of this chapter is "the differentiation of the path of śamatha and vipaśyanā, which is subsumed under yoga." (VS, P 5539, vol. 'i [111]:73b.2) This chapter is one of the great scriptural locus classici for śamatha and vipaśyanā in the Mahāyāna tradition. (See also S, vol. II, n12, p. 33 for a bibliography on these topics; W, vol. thi [119]:198-220; and ME 67-114)

3 "Bodhisattvas 'abide in' [this resolution] because they have heard [those doctrines] well, apprehended them well, trained in reciting them, and analyzed them well with their minds, and have realized them through insight. Abiding in [realization of] them, they are not committed to cyclic existence, resources, etc., and they undertake a supramundane path. Therefore, that [resolution] is a cause of undertaking the path of śamatha and vipaśyanā, an abode that has risen above worldlings." (B, vol. cho [205]:275.6)

"[This enlightenment] is 'unsurpassable' in terms of six unsurpassabilities: unsurpassable perception, unsurpassable hearing, unsurpassable attainments, unsurpassable training, unsurpassable religious service, and unsurpassable mindfulness. It is 'perfect' because it is non-erroneous with respect to the own-being of all phenomena. 'Enlightenment' means realization. 'Unwavering resolution' refers to generating, uninterruptedly and continually, from the depth of one's thought, the mind of enlightenment . . ." (B 276.1)

4 In the context of meditation, an 'object of observation' (dmigs-pa, ālambana) is any object that a meditator takes to mind. (See COM 47)

5 "'Conceptual images' are objects of activity imagined by samādhi that are partially similar to things that are objects of knowledge. 'Non-conceptual images' are correct objects that are the focus of samādhi that are partially similar to things that are objects of knowledge." (W, vol. thi [119]:185.7. See also Kamalaśīla's Bhāvanākrama 1-3)

"'Observing the limits of phenomena' refers to observing the relative aspects of existence and the ultimate aspects of existence of all phenomena. 'Relative aspects of existence' refers to the aggregates,

constituents, and sense spheres. 'Ultimate aspects of existence' refers to the four noble truths, suchness, the impermanence of all compounded phenomena, the suffering [associated with] all compounded phenomena, the selflessness of all phenomena, [the fact that] nirvāṇa is peace, and to emptiness, wishlessness, and signlessness." (W 180.4) "Accomplishment of the purpose" refers to transformation of the basis (gnas-gyur-pa, āśraya-parāvṛtti) in general, which includes the actualization of the Dharmakāya. (W 180.6. See also B, vol. cho [205]:277-81)

6 "Seclusion" refers to physical isolation (lus-dben-pa, kāya-viveka), and "remaining in seclusion" refers to mental isolation (sems-dben-pa, citta-viveka). There are three aspects of isolation: "an excellent abode, excellent behavior, and excellent isolation." Excellent abodes are of three types: hermitages, places without householders, and roofless dwellings. The third type consists of such places as burial grounds, hermitages, mountain caves, and fields. (B, vol. cho [205]: 302.1) "Genuinely settling the mind inwardly" (nang-du-yang-dag-bzhag) is samādhi. (B 304.6. See also W, vol. thi [119]:195.2)

7 "Pliancy" (shin-tu-sbyangs-pa, praśrabdhi) is one of the ten virtuous mental factors. It "refers to fitness for action that freely applies the full energy of body and mind toward good purposes. This ease comes from relaxing rigidity, and it removes all obstacles." (WE 148) In SB, Asaṅga states: "Pliancy is supreme happiness and joy that is preceded by faith and clarity. Gradually making the mind joyful, pliancy [eliminates] the non-virtuous class of errant tendencies." (NE 4036, vol. dzi:117a.4-.5. See also 147b.6-148a.4; Kośa II:25)

These are called physical and mental pliancy "because there is no physical fatigue and no mental turmoil." (B, vol. cho [205]:308.5)

8 The aspects of the mind (sems-kyi-rnam-pa, cittākāra) that are abandoned are "non-conceptual images, the objects of observation of the path of śamatha." (B, vol. cho [205]:310.4)

9 "'Differentiation' involves differentiation by way of the varieties of existence (ji-snyed-yod-pa-nyid) with respect to objects of observation for purifying behavior, skillful objects of observation, and objects of observation for purifying afflictions. "Thorough differentiation' involves thorough differentiation by way of how things actually exist with respect to those very objects of activity that serve as objects of observation. "Thorough investigation' involves thoroughly

investigating those objects of observation—through conceptual mental activity that is endowed with wisdom—after having thoroughly apprehended their signs. ‘Thorough analysis’ involves thoroughly analyzing those objects of activity that serve as objects of observation at the time of correctly investigating them. The next five are synonyms of vipaśyanā. . . . ‘Forbearance’ is forbearance in terms of understanding. ‘Desire’ refers to interest. ‘Wisdom’ refers to discrimination. ‘View’ refers to thorough searching. ‘Investigation’ refers to individual investigation.” (W, vol. thi [119]:200.2)

10 “‘Perceives [an image]’ here refers to a non-conceptual realizational consciousness of a yogi who has vipaśyanā. The ‘image that is the focus of samādhi’ refers to conceptual and non-conceptual images that are the focus of samādhis of śamatha and vipaśyanā.” (B, vol. cho [205]:323.6)

11 This is a key point for Yogācāra writers. “Because that image is of the nature of the mind, it is not different from mind.” (B, vol. cho [205]:324.2) “They are said to be ‘not different’ because the object is not separate from the mind. The fact that in reality they are neither one nor different destroys the apprehension of them as being different, whereby they are said to be ‘not different’.” (W, vol. thi [119]:207.5) What serves as an object of observation does not exist when separated from mind: “Whatever is an object of observation by consciousness is explained as appearing from cognition-only.” (W 208.1)

In the phrase “Why is it not different?” the word “not” is added in the translation on the basis of the sTog-palace and Them-spang-sma editions of the Saṃdhinirmocana Sūtra and the commentaries by W and B. The negative particle is not found in the sDe-dge edition.

12 Similar questions, based on observing that an eye cannot see itself, a finger cannot touch itself, and swords cannot cut themselves, have also been raised against the doctrine of cognition-only, but the case of the mind is different from that of the others. (W, vol. thi [119]:208.7) “When an other-dependent phenomenon such as mind is produced, because such images appear, the mind apprehends them as objects.” (W 210.3) The mind’s perception of objects is not like the rays of the sun illuminating external objects; rather, like an object in a mirror, something appears to be an external object but is only of the entity of mind: “Objects of direct perception arise from the entity of [the consciousness itself]. Thus the Sūtras say that although it is not the case that any phenomenon appre-

hends another phenomenon, at the time when a consciousness is produced it appears as similar in character to those [things]. Therefore it is said that things are apprehended." (W 211.1)

13 "Childish beings who do not perceive suchness, whose vision has degenerated due to faults of vision, perceive external objects as existing although they do not exist." (B, vol. cho [205]:326.5) "Even objects of observation of distracted minds are not separate from the mind, but childish beings' minds are in error, and so they consider objects of observation as external objects." (W, vol. thi [119]:217.5) "When they abandon external objects, then they pacify incorrect minds; when they pacify incorrect minds, then they realize the middle way." (W 218.1)

Asaṅga (MS) states: "When the mind is in meditative equipoise, whatever images that are objects of knowledge—blue and so forth—that are seen, the mind is seen. Blue and so forth are not objects that are different from mind. By this reasoning, Bodhisattvas should infer that all cognitions are cognition-only." (S, vol. I, II:7.2)

14 "At that time, one understands that phenomena do not exist apart from cognition. Having understood that, one also takes suchness to mind." (W, vol. thi [119]:221.6)

15 The three kinds of śamatha refer to a threefold division corresponding to the threefold division of vipaśyanā: śamatha having signs; śamatha of examination; and śamatha of individual investigation. Since there are three kinds of vipaśyanā that observe mental signs, there are three corresponding types of śamatha that observe an uninterrupted mind. (W, vol. thi [119]:226.1)

16 These "signs of the doctrine" (chos-kyi-mtshan-ma, dharmānimitta) are "signs that are the words, letters, and so forth [of doctrines]." (B, vol. cho [205]:336.4) "These Bodhisattvas obtain śamatha and vipaśyanā in terms of the meaning of the twelve forms of doctrinal teachings [listed on p. 151 of this Sūtra] through wisdom applied to those doctrines that they have previously heard and thought about." (W, vol. thi [119]:247.7)

17 A Bodhisattva who observes integrated doctrines ('dres-pa'i-chos, miśra-dharma) can bring together all the enumerations, characteristics, and contextual etymologies found in various Sūtras and understand that they are all of one taste. (B, vol. cho [205]:339.1. See W, vol. thi [119]:252.6–253.4, and JNG 325a-b)

18 "Transformation of the basis" refers to the fundamental changes that are brought about through the cultivation of method and wisdom. (See p. 341 note 5 of this Sūtra)

"Nirvāṇa" refers to the sphere of the uncompounded ('dus-mabyas-pa'i-dbyings) and 'transformation of the basis' refers to the Dharmakāya. 'All these doctrines' refers to all of those doctrines that are of one taste, those countless virtuous scriptural doctrines and realizational doctrines, which, through their manifest expression and their teaching, clarify [meanings] and increase virtue." (B, vol. cho [205]:339.6)

19 "The first, somewhat integrated doctrines, [are so named] because one observes the twelve limbs of teachings in terms of individual differences. The second, highly integrated doctrines, [are so named] because one observes the twelve limbs of teachings collectively. The third, immeasurably integrated doctrines, [are so named] because one observes the twelve limbs of the Tathāgatas' immeasurable teachings as a single collection." (W, vol. di [120]:129.6)

20 The term "conceptual (rtog-pa-dang-bcas-pa, savitarka) samādhi" refers to examination and the term "analytical (dpyod-pa-dang-bcas-pa, savicāra) samādhi" refers to individual analysis. (W, vol. thi [119]:278.7. See also p. 149 of this Sūtra, and p. 340 note 5, where conceptual and non-conceptual images are discussed; and Kośa VIII:23d-e)

Asaṅga equates non-conceptual samādhi with higher wisdom (adhiprajñā). In his commentary on MS, Vasubandhu states: "Intuitive knowledge [literally, free from concepts] is exalted wisdom. For Śrāvakas, the absence of concepts consists of not imagining any of the four errors; for Bodhisattvas, the absence of concepts consists of not imagining any dharmas. This is the difference between the two absences of concepts." (S, vol. II, 8)

21 "Clear and coarse signs" (mtshan-ma-gsal-zhing-rags-pa, vyakta-sthūla-nimitta) are images on the level of association with conceptuality of the first concentration. (B, vol. cho [205]:346.1) "Coarse signs" include "all signs that are sources of affliction." (W, vol. thi [119]:441.7)

22 "Sobering phenomena" (kun-tu-skyo-barg-yur-pa'i-chos, udvegam-āpadyata-dharma) are things such as corpses, specific sufferings, impermanence, etc., that reduce excitement or help one to realize saṃsāric sufferings. "Whatever serves to pacify and isolate the mind through the power of those two types of mental attention [to sober-

ing phenomena and the uninterrupted mind] in that way is a 'cause of *śamatha*'. " (W, vol. thi [119]:283.5)

23 The term *don* (artha), translated in this section as "objects," could also be correctly translated as "meanings."

24 Jambudvīpa, the southern of the four great land masses of traditional Buddhist cosmology, measures 2,000 *yojanas* on three sides and three-and-one-half *yojanas* on its fourth side. (See WE 214)

25 There are fourteen types of resources (*longs-spyod*): food, drink, vehicles, clothing, ornaments, laughter, singing, instrumental music, perfume, flower garlands, unguents, vessels, exhibitions, and men and women. (W, vol. thi [119]:314.4), citing YB)

26 "Reality-limit" is a synonym for emptiness and the ultimate. (MV 218 [I.14]. See also COM 18–19)

27 See W, vol. thi [119]:319–21.

28 "'Worldly realms' (*'jig-rten-gyi-khams*, *loka-dhātu*) refers to limitless worldly realms. These are the environments—limitless in the ten directions and also having limitless names—that are objects for Bodhisattvas to purify. 'The realm of sentient beings' (*sems-can-gyi-khams*, *sattva-dhātu*) refers to limitless realms of sentient beings. These are the sixty-four activated and inactivated lineages of sentient beings who are objects for Bodhisattvas to mature. 'The realm of qualities' (*chos-kyi-khams*, *dharma-dhātu*) refers to the limitless realms of qualities. These are the realms of sentient beings in the worldly realms that have become afflicted or purified due to virtuous, non-virtuous, and neutral practices that are to be realized by Bodhisattvas. 'The realm of discipline' (*'dul-ba'i-khams*, *vinaya-dhātu*) refers to the limitless realms of discipline. These are sentient beings whose lineage has been activated, who are endowed with fortune, are suitable to be liberated from suffering forever, and are to be liberated by Bodhisattvas. 'The realm of methods of discipline' (*'dul-ba'i-thabs-kyi-khams*, *vinayopāyadhātu*) refers to the limitless methods of discipline. These are the methods for freeing those sentient beings whom Bodhisattvas instruct." (B, vol. cho [205]:371.7)

29 "They abide in words because wisdom [arisen from] hearing arises due to the power of words. They take them literally because they apprehend these letters according to the literal meanings of the words they comprise. But they do not apprehend the words

through the meaning, as is done by the two [other] wisdoms." They do not understand the intent because they do not fully understand the thought behind the Buddha's scriptures. They do not actualize them because "when they observe such objects, they still do not actualize partially concordant images and do not attain samādhi. They are concordant with liberation because they are concordant with the liberation of nirvāṇa after a long time and because [nirvāṇa] contains both aspects of liberation from compounded and uncompounded phenomena. But they do not thoroughly know liberative objects because they abide in a fluctuating mind and have not abandoned entanglements due to not attaining the cessations." (W, vol. thi [119]:339.2)

30 A standard list of eighteen emptinesses is described in Mahāvūyutpatti XXXVII:1-18; W, vol. thi [119]:361-76; B, vol. cho [205]:384-88; and ME 204-5. Sixteen emptinesses are listed in MV 219 (I.16c).

31 "Through having eliminated the two [types of] images that are objects of observation of śamatha and vipaśyanā, there is no manifest grasping of the other-dependent character as the imputational character." (B, vol. cho [205]:388.7. See also W, vol. thi [119]:383.2)

32 "'Views [that overvalue] the body' (lus-la-lta-ba, kāya-dṛṣṭi) are attachments to the internal sense spheres. 'Views [that overvalue] resources' (longs-spyod-la-lta-ba, bhoga-dṛṣṭi) are attachments to the external sense spheres." (B, vol. cho [205]:396.3)

33 "'Abiding in turmoil' refers to physical non-isolation (lus-kyi-mi-dben-pa, kāya-aviveka). 'Being satisfied with inferior [attainment]' refers to mental non-isolation (sems-kyi-mi-dben-pa, citta-aviveka)." (B, vol. cho [205]:396.6. See also p. 341 note 6 of this Sūtra)

34 "'Mental contemplations of the Mahāyāna' are contemplations on the selflessness of phenomena (dharma-nairātmya) and are endowed with the paths and fruits of Bodhisattvas. By contrast, 'mental contemplations of Śrāvakas and Pratyekabuddhas' are contemplations on the selflessness of persons (pudgala-nairātmya) and are associated with abiding on a path of asceticism, and attaining the fruits of asceticism." (B, vol. cho [205]:399.2)

35 "'Signs' are shapes of the forms of men, women, and so forth. 'Conceptuality' refers to the five, conceptuality of desire, harmful intent, and so forth. The 'secondary afflictions' are all the bases that are concordant with making the mind afflicted. 'External objects of

observation' include all aspects of objects. Through these, the mind becomes scattered." (B, vol. cho [205]:399.4)

36 Sentient beings who relish the experience of the four concentrations and the four formless absorptions can attain birth among the long-lived gods. Through this they lose the ability to practice the concentrations and absorptions, and so fall away from benefitting sentient beings. (B, vol. cho [205]:399.6. See also WE 288–89)

37 "With respect to the 'signs of mental appropriation', there are two causes for connecting lives of the basis-consciousness itself: (1) predispositions for manifestly apprehending the imputational character, and (2) appropriating physical sense powers that serve as bases [of consciousnesses]. When viewing the body and establishing mindfulness of the body—the internal body, the external body, and bodies that are both internal and external which are appropriated [through those two causes]—whatever images appear with respect to the body (the impure signs and the signs of suchness that are the focus of samādhi) are the 'signs of mental appropriation'." (B, vol. cho [205]:406.3)

"With respect to 'signs of experience', there is obscuration concerning the self, the view of self, pride of self, and attachment to self of just that mind. When viewing feelings and establishing mindfulness of feelings [produced] by these—the internal feelings, external feelings, and feelings that are both internal and external that are experienced—whatever images appear with respect to feelings (the signs of suffering and the signs of suchness that are the focus of samādhi) are called 'signs of mental experience'." (B 406.5)

"'Signs of cognition' are just that mind's cognitions of objects of observation. Through these, when viewing the mind and establishing mindfulness of the mind—internal minds, external minds, and minds that are both internal and external, which are cognized as just that mind—whatever images appear with respect to the mind (the signs of impermanence and the signs of suchness that are the focus of samādhi) are 'signs of mental cognition'." (B 406.6)

"'Signs of affliction and purification' are the mind's own minds and mental factors. When viewing phenomena and establishing mindfulness of phenomena—in regard to phenomena that are abodes and objects of observation of [those minds and mental factors] that are internal phenomena, external phenomena, and phenomena that are both internal and external—whatever images

appear that are the focus of samādhi . . . (the signs of affliction and the signs of the suchness of that and the signs of purification and the signs of the suchness of that) . . . are the 'signs of affliction and purification'." (B 407.1)

"'Internal signs' are aspects involved in realizing the emptiness of the internal. 'External signs' are aspects involved in realizing the emptiness of the external. 'Signs of both' are aspects involved in realizing the emptiness of [both] the internal and external." (B 407.4)

"'Signs involved in thinking, "I must work for the sake of all sentient beings" are aspects involved in realizing the emptiness of emptiness. One realizes the emptiness of emptiness as an antidote to neglecting the welfare of sentient beings upon having the thought, 'If the internal and the external are both emptiness, then what is to be achieved in emptiness?' One realizes the emptiness of emptiness, thinking, '[I] will apply myself to the welfare of all sentient beings since that emptiness is itself also empty.'" (B 407.5)

"'Signs of knowledge' are aspects involved in realizing the emptiness of the great. This is the realization that all worldly realms in the ten directions are not external or internal things, but are of the nature of consciousness." (B 407.7)

"'Signs of suchness, the truth of suffering, the truth of the source of suffering, the truth of the cessation of suffering, and the truth of the path' are aspects involved in realizing the emptiness of the ultimate." (B 407.7)

"'Signs of compounded phenomena' are aspects that are involved in realizing the emptiness of compounded phenomena. 'Signs of uncompounded phenomena' are aspects involved in realizing the emptiness of uncompounded phenomena." (B 408.1)

"'Signs of permanence' are aspects for realizing the emptiness of what has passed beyond the extremes. One realizes that persons are utterly non-existent in permanent, permanent time and everlasting, everlasting time. 'Signs of impermanence' are aspects for realizing the emptiness of what is beginningless and endless. One realizes the emptiness of impermanent phenomena, [the fact that] compounded phenomena lack a former or later limit." (B 408.2)

"'Signs that have a nature associated with suffering and change' are aspects for realizing the emptiness of the indestructible [i.e., nirvāṇa]. . . . That which has a nature of suffering is the aggregates. That which has a nature of change is also the aggregates. This is

because they are true sufferings and because they have an impermanent nature. The aggregates having a nature of suffering and the aggregates having a nature of change are 'what are to be discarded': This is a synonym for the aggregates. The indestructible [literally, 'that which is not to be discarded'] is *nirvāṇa*, because it is the utter cessation of suffering and has a changeless nature. 'Signs having a nature that is unchangeable' are aspects for realizing what is emptiness by nature." (B 408.3)

"Signs unlike the characteristics of compounded phenomena' or 'signs of their own characteristics' are aspects involved in realizing the emptiness of character. The different character of compounded phenomena is the uncompounded, the ultimate truth. Their specific characters are compounded phenomena, conventional truths. One realizes that those two characters are empty of being without an inherent nature." (B 409.4)

"Signs of universality, as in the context of knowing everything as "everything" are aspects for realizing the emptiness of everything. One realizes that all the phenomena included within [the categories] compounded and uncompounded are empty." (B 409.5)

"Signs of the selflessness of persons' are aspects involved in realizing the emptiness of the unobservable. One understands persons as being the emptiness of the unobservable." (B 409.6)

"Signs of the selflessness of phenomena' are aspects involved in realizing the emptiness of non-things. One realizes that phenomena are empty of being non-things. In this way, one enters into suchness, the antidote to all the signs of the other-dependent." (B 409.6. See also W, vol. thi [119]:442)

38 "Individually and internally' means within the nature of the mind. 'Known by oneself' means that one knows non-dualistically." (B, vol. cho [205]:410.2. See pp. 171-73 of this Sūtra for a list of the seven aspects of suchness.)

39 The term *khye'u* usually means "puppy" or "child." In his *Dag-yig-thon-mi'i-dgongs-rgyan* (New Delhi, 1969, p. 38), Tshe-brtan-zhabs-drung states that *khye'u* refers to "a small piece of wood that is used to set up and make firm," such as a wooden peg used to hold furniture and so forth together. The example indicates that just as a small nail could be used to expel a much larger one, so this mental contemplation (which at first is weak compared to the afflictions) can be used to eliminate the grossest afflictions at first and then gradually

to eliminate more subtle ones. (See S, vol. II, 219–20 for the same analogy, and W, vol. thi [119]:452.3 for different ways to apply this analogy.)

40 The Bodhisattva's great powers are the power of clairvoyance, the power of doctrine, innate powers, common powers, and uncommon powers. (B, vol. cho [205]:411.7. See also 412–25, and COM 98)

41 In this passage "skillful" refers to "a mind that thoroughly knows" (yongs-su-shes-par-byed-pa'i-sems). (W, vol. thi [119]:457.5)

42 "It is a 'foundation' because it is the appropriating consciousness, which is the abode of the predispositions for afflicted and purified phenomena. It is a 'receptacle' because it is a world that is an environment." (B, vol. cho [205]:425.6)

43 In the Sems-tsam-pa system, "conceptual [consciousness includes] all minds and mental factors of the three realms that have dualistic appearance." (Drang-nges-rnam-'byed-kyi-zin-bris-zab-don-gsal-ba'i-sgron-me, by Ser-shul-dge-bshes, 36a-b)

44 In both Mahāyāna and Hīnayāna systems of meditation, joy and bliss are both present in the first two concentrations. In the third concentration joy is absent but bliss is present. Meditative equanimity is also developed in the third concentration, and is strengthened in the fourth concentration to the point where bliss disappears and is replaced with a pervasive equanimity. Joy and bliss are progressively eliminated because they interfere with mental stability. (See WE 88–90, 287–88; Kośa VIII:2b; *Meditative States*, 92–128)

45 "Faith and so forth" includes the eleven virtuous mental factors, the six contaminated consciousnesses, and the eight uncontaminated consciousnesses associated with those. (W, vol. thi [119]:464.2)

46 "Because the mind's emergence is liberation from the bonds of the other-dependent and the imputational and abides in the suchness of the thoroughly established, in that way consciousness is indicated as being skilled with respect to that. The 'bonds of signs' are signs of the other-dependent character, and the 'bonds of errant tendencies' are predispositions for imputations." (B, vol. cho [205]:428.7) "Having thoroughly realized, just as it is, the mind that is concordant with non-conceptual exalted wisdom, one renounces the two bonds." (W, vol. thi [119]:465.3)

47 It is called "means" because it induces various qualities, such as the clairvoyances and the absence of affliction. (W, vol. thi [119]:467.1. See also COM 175)

48 "Because they follow from errant tendencies that are seeds of the two obstructions, they are 'errant tendencies that are abodes.'" (W, vol. thi [119]:469.7. See also 470-71 for alternate explanations)

"With respect to awareness of errant tendencies that are abodes: 'abode' refers to the untransformed basis-consciousness itself, because it is the abode of all the phenomena of minds and mental factors and all the predispositions. On this occasion, because one is [at] the level of transformation of the basis into nirvāṇa with a remainder of aggregates, the transformed basis-consciousness abides in non-conceptual exalted wisdom itself." (B, vol. cho [205]:430.2)

The "fruits" of [those tendencies] are the six external objects, which arise through the power of the six internal sense powers and thus are their fruits. Because knowers of objects also arise upon observing those, they are [also] 'fruits'." (W, vol. thi [119]:470.1)

49 "'Awareness of form states' [includes] the seeds of desire realm feelings. 'Awareness of formless states' [includes] the seeds of formless realm feelings. 'Awareness of errant tendencies that have come to fruition' [includes] the seeds that bring forth present results. 'Awareness of errant tendencies that have not yet come to fruition' [includes] the seeds that have not yet brought forth results." (W, vol. thi [119]:471.5) The first is "whatever feelings accompany the five collections of consciousness." The second is "whatever feelings accompany the mental consciousness." These are the physical and mental feelings that are the awareness of present effects produced by past ignorance, motivational factors, and so forth. (W 471.6. See also 491.7)

50 "Should you ask, 'If Tathāgatas pass beyond sorrow in the element of nirvāṇa without a remainder of the aggregates, how then can they work to establish the welfare of others until the end of cyclic existence?' [Their ability to do this] is due to the power of former aspirations: Tathāgatas continually work for the benefit of sentient beings, although they display nirvāṇa." (B, vol. cho [205]:437.7)

Notes to Chapter Nine

1 This great Bodhisattva is named Avalokiteśvara ("The Lord Who Looks Down") "because internally this Bodhisattva is endowed with wisdom and compassion and externally has effortless natural dominion over the three actions of body and so forth." (W, vol. thi

[119]:488.5) Avalokiteśvara is often depicted with a thousand arms, representing his immense capacity for compassionate help.

2 "[On] the fourth stage one abides in surpassing wisdom that is involved with things concordant with enlightenment. [On] the fifth stage, one abides in surpassing wisdom involved with the truths. [On] the sixth stage, one abides in surpassing wisdom involved with dependent origination. [On] the seventh stage, one abides in signlessness with exertion. [On] the eighth stage, one abides in signlessness without exertion. [On] the ninth stage, one abides in correct individual knowledge. [On] the tenth stage, one abides in the excellences and thorough completions of Bodhisattvas. The eleventh stage is the state of a Tathāgata." (W, vol. thi [119]:493.6)

"Pure thought" refers to "surpassing thought." (W, vol. thi [119]: 489.7) According to a commentary on MS it refers to "the nature of non-conceptual exalted wisdom," but according to YB it refers to "the nature of belief." According to Asvabhāva and Vasubandhu it refers to "the nature of faith and aspiration." (W 490.4) Through this attitude one overcomes the afflictions, secondary afflictions, and all activities of Māra; one thinks to control one's own mind; one considers the faults of compounded phenomena; considers the benefits of nirvāṇa; thinks to constantly engage in meditative cultivation of virtuous phenomena concordant with enlightenment; thinks of the isolation [of body and mind] concordant with that cultivation; thinks without regard to worldly things, renown, goods, and services; one thinks to realize the Mahāyāna upon having abandoned the Hīnayāna; and one thinks to bring about the welfare of all sentient beings. (W 491.4)

3 "'Limb' (yan-lag, aṅga) means 'state' (gnas)." (W, vol. thi [119]: 494.6)

4 The ten aspects of doctrinal practice are: "(1) causing beings to copy Sūtras that are included in the Bodhisattva canon and that contain Mahāyāna doctrines; (2) memorizing them; (3) venerating them; (4) giving them to others; (5) honoring them when they are taught and listening to them; (6) reading them oneself; (7) likewise receiving an oral transmission for realizing them entirely; (8) extensively reciting those for which oral transmission has been received; (9) extensively teaching them to others; (10) having gone into seclusion, engaging in contemplating them, comprehending them, realizing them, and meditating on them." (W, vol. thi [119]:497.2, citing YB)

5 "When one thoroughly passes beyond preparation due to the power of the causes and conditions of the ten doctrinal practices and so forth, one enters into the faultless reality of the first stage. Due to those causes and conditions, one thoroughly completes those limbs. 'Reality' (yang-dag-pa-nyid) refers to the uncontaminated path of the Āryas, which is called 'reality' because due to it one turns away from error." (W, vol. thi [119]:498.5)

6 On the first Bodhisattva stage Bodhisattvas are not endowed with advanced abilities, so they do not understand habituation to subtle faults of faulty ethics. "This inability is due to three obscurations: (1) ignorance of faults that are subtle infractions; (2) ignorance of various types of actions; and (3) 'fruiting of an errant tendency', which is whatever is associated with what is manifested due to connection with those very ignorances. Through abandoning these three obscurations, one engages in correct effort. Having abandoned these three obscurations, one enters the second stage and attains eight pure qualities: pure thought, pure love, pure compassion, pure perfections, pure perception with respect to performing the activities of a Buddha, pure ripening of sentient beings, pure power, and pure qualities. From the first stage up to the Buddha stage these eight qualities become progressively greater and more advanced." (W, vol. thi [119]:502.3, citing YB)

7 "They are called 'absorptions' (snyoms-par-jug-pa, samāpatti) because they are final states that are devoid of laxity and excitement. This is because they are final states of pacification and isolation. . . . They are referred to as 'worldly' ('jig-rten-pa, laukika) [samādhis] because they are associated with contamination and because they are 'engagers'." (W, vol. thi [119]:503.3. See also WE 287-90)

"To retain" (gzungs, dhāraṇī) "has the nature of memory and wisdom." (W, vol. thi [119]:507.3) There are four types of retention: "retention of doctrines, retention of meanings, retentions that are secret mantras, and retentions that are means of attaining the forbearances of Bodhisattvas." (W 507.4, citing YB) Samādhi and absorption are the causes of wisdom [arisen from] meditation, and retention is the cause of wisdom [arisen from] listening and reflecting. (W 508.4)

8 To enter into the fourth stage, one must cultivate dispassion toward meditative states. (W, vol. thi [119]:509.6) The causes of not completing the limbs of the fourth stage are: "not abiding according to one's wish in [contemplation of] things concordant with enlight-

enment that one has attained; and not being able to abide in thoroughly pure mind after having abandoned craving for absorptions and for doctrine. (W 510.3, quoting MS)

9 They are not dispassionate toward saṃsāra and nirvāṇa "because they have not attained the path of non-difference of saṃsāra and nirvāṇa." (W, vol. thi [119]:511.5)

10 "The sixth stage is not attained for two reasons: [Bodhisattvas] are unable to individually realize, just as it is, the reasoning of dependent origination with respect to involvement in cyclic existence; and they are very discouraged about suffering and the afflictions that are the sources [of suffering]." (W, vol. thi [119]:513.3)

11 On the first five stages one mainly practices meditation associated with signs and practices only a little signless meditation. On the sixth stage, however, the situation is reversed, and one mainly meditates on signlessness. Until Bodhisattvas are able to perform this meditation continuously and uninterruptedly they cannot progress to the seventh stage. (W, vol. thi [119]:514.5, citing VJ)

12 "Due to inability to abandon exertion with respect to abiding in signlessness and inability to also attain mastery with respect to signs, seventh-stage Bodhisattvas do not complete the eighth limb." (W, vol. thi [119]:516.2)

13 "'Enumerations' are objects of the comprehension of doctrine. 'Characteristics' are objects of the comprehension of meanings. 'Etymologies' are objects of the comprehension of etymologies. 'Attaining mastery in teaching the doctrine in all its aspects' is the object of the comprehension of meditation. Mastery of these is the precondition for entering the ninth stage." (W, vol. thi [119]:517.3. See also W, vol. di [120]:13.1)

14 Ninth-stage Bodhisattvas gain mastery over the four comprehensions. (W, vol. thi [119]:518.1. See also p. 181 of this Sūtra) Ninth-stage Bodhisattvas do not have the capacity to perfect the Dharmakāya that teaches doctrine thoroughly and cannot attain the unhindered and unobstructed wisdom of the six clairvoyances. (W, 519.7, citing a commentary on MS)

15 On the tenth stage there are three obstructions to entering the Tathāgata stage: ignorance in terms of very subtle attachments to all objects of knowledge; ignorance in terms of very subtle obstruc-

tions from all objects of knowledge; and errant tendencies that arise from those. When one overcomes these three, "one enters the Tathāgata stage, attains seven superior purities and purity that is free from birth. One perfects the Dharmakāya and also attains unattached and unobstructed insight and wisdom." (W, vol. thi [119]:521.5, citing a commentary on MS)

16 "In the first moment, due to actualizing a path of an uninterrupted vajra-like samādhi, one abandons the most subtle seeds of the two obstructions simultaneously. Because one abandons the afflictive obstructions, one is 'unattached'. Because one abandons the obstructions to omniscience, one is 'unimpeded'. In the second moment, one actualizes a path of liberation and becomes completely enlightened with respect to all aspects of objects of knowledge." (W, vol. thi [119]:542.1)

17 "Because [the obscurations] are ignorances, they are a class discordant with liberative wisdom. The eleven discordant classes of errant tendencies are connected with each of the eleven stages. Because they are predispositions, they are a class discordant with liberation of mind." (B, vol. cho [205]:520.3. See also W, vol. di [120]:3.2)

18 "Those who cultivate generosity, ethics, and patience on the first, second, and third stages are similar to worldly [beings]. Those on the fourth stage attain qualities concordant with enlightenment and pass beyond the mundane, completely conquering the two views of belief in true personhood [as constituting a real 'I' and 'mine']". (W, vol. di [120]:9.1)

19 "On the fifth stage, through meditating on the four truths, one enters a path that is without the differentiation of the causes and effects of affliction and purification with respect to the four truths. Therefore, one abandons the great obscurations of turning away [from saṃsāra] and toward [nirvāṇa]." (W, vol. di [120]:10.1, citing VJ)

20 "The obscuration to manifestly realizing the operation of compounded phenomena' refers to considering afflictions as existent; this is because the operation of compounded phenomena is part of the class of afflicted [phenomena]. The obscuration of the arising of many signs' involves considering purification as existent; this is because one grasps at the signs of purified [phenomena]. . . . [Because of the first,] one conceives [true] sufferings and [true] sources as the approach to entering saṃsāra. [Because of the sec-

ond,] one conceives [true] cessations and [true] paths as the approach to the characteristics of purification." (W, vol. di [120]:10.4, citing VJ)

21 The first obscuration involves "conceiving beings as existent." The second type involves "conceiving negators as existent." This involves conceiving as existent the arising of the subtle signs of production and cessation due to one type of innate karma of the obstructions to omniscience. (W, vol. di [120]:11.2, citing VJ. See also VJ 649-50)

22 On the seventh stage one continually, uninterruptedly engages only in signlessness, but this requires exertion. On the eighth stage, one overcomes the need for exertion and engages in this meditation effortlessly, thus attaining mastery with respect to signless meditation and mastery with respect to signs. (W, vol. di [120]:12.4)

23 Mastery of "fearless inspiration" (spobs, pratibhāna) is "comprehension of fearless inspiration, because one understands the faculties [of other sentient beings] well and is skilled in teaching doctrine." Fearless inspiration enables Śrāvakas and Bodhisattvas to correctly and fearlessly preach doctrine. (W, vol. di [120]:13.4)

24 "The obscuration of very subtle attachment to all that is knowable' is a subtle obstruction to omniscience. 'The obscuration of very subtle obstacles' refers to all the seeds of naturally operating afflictive obstructions." (W, vol. di [120]:14.5, citing VJ)

25 "Bodhisattvas have six kinds of skill in means by which they ripen other sentient beings: Bodhisattvas cause small virtuous roots of sentient beings to bring about limitless effects; with little difficulty they produce and establish vast and limitless roots of virtue; they eliminate the anger of those who wish to harm Buddha's teachings; they cause ordinary [beings] to enter [into the path]; they thoroughly ripen those who have entered; and they liberate those who have been ripened." (B, vol. cho [205]:544.2) Through compassion "Bodhisattvas take rebirth in order to protect sentient beings." (W, vol. di [120]:37.3, citing YB)

26 "All the Bodhisattvas' aspirations can be condensed into five types: aspiration for bodhicitta, aspiration for births [that benefit sentient beings], aspiration for [auspicious] objects of activity, correct aspirations, and great aspirations." (B, vol. cho [205]:545.1) Bodhisattvas have "extensive aspirations" because they have extensive objects of observation [i.e., all sentient beings]. Their aspirations are

"auspicious" because they seek enlightenment, an auspicious state of perfection. (W, vol di [120]:38.7)

27 "Because they aspire toward the Bodhisattva emptiness, they are not frightened by nirvāṇa, whereby they perceive the benefits of nirvāṇa and do not abandon the faith and belief that perceive the benefits existing in it. Due to this, they have previously completed the accumulations [for] nirvāṇa, and so they are 'skilled regarding the blissful state of nirvāṇa'." (B, vol. cho [205]:547.1)

28 "When Bodhisattvas apply themselves through the aspiration toward [realization of] emptiness, because they understand cyclic existence as it really is they are able to enter into surpassing equanimity of mind with respect to all afflictions, desire, and so forth." (B, vol. cho [205]:547.3) "When applying themselves to [realization of] emptiness, Bodhisattvas will not quickly pass beyond sorrow in seeking nirvāṇa. Because they do not pass beyond sorrow, they ripen the qualities of a Buddha and ripen sentient beings." Although there are many sufferings in cyclic existence, "their minds do not become depressed by cyclic existence." (B 547.5) "They do not pass beyond sorrow because they constantly generate great compassion." They aspire to benefit sentient beings despite the tribulations of cyclic existence because they have completely pacified desire. (W, vol. di [120]:39.7)

29 These are the six perfections. "They are called 'perfections' because their time and nature are pure, and through them one attains supreme results." (W, vol. di [120]:41.6, citing YB)

30 "Effort is 'omnipresent' (kun-tu-'gro-ba, sarvatraga) because [effort] is of the nature of applying oneself to all virtuous qualities." (B, vol. cho [205]:566.5)

31 "Spiritual guides" (dge-ba'i-bshes-gnyen, kalyāṇa-mitra) are those who abide in the ethics of the Bodhisattva vows. (W, vol. di [120]:58.2, citing YB) Applying themselves to a virtuous course, literally "virtuous class" (dge-ba'i-phyogs, kuśala-pakṣa), involves "completing the cultivation of the six perfections in a manner that is constant, continuous, and uninterrupted." (W 59.3, quoting MS)

32 These four types are the perfection of skillful means, the perfection of aspiration, the perfection of power, and the perfection of exalted wisdom.

33 The four means of gathering disciples (*bsdu-ba'i-dngos-po*, *sam-graha-vastu*) are methods used by teachers to attract students: giving both teachings and material goods, speaking pleasantly, engaging in beneficial activities, and making one's actions accord with one's words. (See *Mahāvīyutpatti* XXXV:1-4)

34 "‘Giving material things’ involves giving what is good, what is clean, and what is suitable after having eliminated the stains of miserliness and the stains of hoarding wealth. ‘Giving the Dharma’ involves engaging in teaching doctrine non-erroneously, in teaching logically, and in causing [others] to take up the bases of training." (W, vol. di [120]:78.2, quoting YB) "Granting fearlessness" consists of "protection from the conditions of suffering, protection from loss of life, and protection from the continuum of cyclic existence." (B, vol. jo [206]:7.7. See also VJ 620)

35 "Patience that endures injury" means that when harmed, "a Bodhisattva trains [in thinking]: ‘This is a result of my own actions, and thus I am undergoing the fruits of suffering from non-virtuous actions that I myself have done.’" ... "Patience that does not consider one's own suffering at all" is the patience of a Bodhisattva who trains correctly and encounters suffering but is able to endure even great suffering that seems meaningless. (W, vol di [120]:81.3-4, citing YB) "‘Patience in discerning the Dharma’ has three aspects: not being frightened by emptiness, not being attached to the two extremes, and being firm with respect to engaging in asceticism." (B, vol. jo [206]:8.6)

36 "‘Effort that is armor’ has three aspects: putting on the armor of great love, the steady force of great compassion, and the steady force of great effort. ‘Effort applied to virtue’ also has three aspects: relying on meaning with great faith, engaging in virtue with great practice, and infusing [all] sentient beings with great dedications. ‘Effort applied for the welfare of sentient beings’ also has three aspects: making unexcelled effort [to develop] equanimity and ethics; laboring to establish [others] in the meaning of doctrines through the four means of gathering [disciples]; and endeavoring [to practice] skillful means with undaunted wisdom." (B, vol. jo [205]:9.2. See also W, vol. di [120]:83.2-7 and VJ 622)

37 "‘The *samādhi* of blissful abiding’ has three aspects: mind that does not conceive doctrine, doctrine that does not conceive mind,

and a concentrated mind that does not conceive either. The 'samādhi that manifestly achieves good qualities' has three aspects: that which establishes bodily qualities, that which establishes qualities of exalted wisdom, and that which establishes qualities of the powers and so forth. The 'samādhi that manifestly achieves the welfare of sentient beings' has three aspects: samādhis that are dedications, pervasive samādhis, and unchangeable samādhis." (B, vol. jo [205]:9.6. See also W, vol. di [120]:85.1)

38 "[Wisdom] focusing on conventional truth' has three aspects: skill with respect to the characteristics of compounded phenomena, skill with respect to the continuum of cyclic existence, and skill with respect to turning away from the continuum of cyclic existence. '[Wisdom] focusing on ultimate truth' also has three aspects: It is non-abiding due to emptiness, non-conceptual due to signlessness, and non-attached due to wishlessness. '[Wisdom] focusing on the welfare of sentient beings' has three aspects: It is [wisdom] that is applied through samādhis to inherent suffering, [wisdom] that eliminates the suffering of compounded phenomena through antidotes, and [wisdom] that completely liberates one from the suffering of doubt." (B, vol. jo [205]:10.2)

39 The first purity entails not seeking fame or profit from others because they have practiced the six perfections. The second refers to practice in terms of the three wheels of purification, i.e., viewing action, agent, and recipient as lacking self. The third indicates the strength of their belief. The fourth indicates that they do not praise themselves and do not despise others, because these would be "serious faults." The fifth is due to being free from laziness. The sixth entails not being satisfied with inferior attainments because they engage in extensive practices and are without discouragement. Regarding the seventh: "Since Bodhisattvas practice doctrine themselves, when they perceive others who also practice, they do not engage in miserliness or jealousy with respect to material things or doctrine." (W, vol. di [120]:108.5)

40 Giving gifts, having purified faults, is giving with "purity of ethics." Not apprehending that "I am the giver and that what is given is mine" and so forth is "purity of view." Giving gifts with compassionate intention is "purity of mind." Giving gifts with an honest face and speaking straightforwardly is "purity of speech." Giving gifts with the correct name, nature, and so forth of the gift is "purity of knowl-

edge." Giving gifts after having abandoned the defilements of laziness, desire, hatred, obscurity, and so forth is "purity from defilements." (W, vol. di [120]:110.2)

41 "A Bodhisattva who suspects that an enemy is about to harm that Bodhisattva quickly goes to that enemy and confesses. [The Bodhisattva] does not wait for the other [i.e., the enemy] to come to him." (W, vol. di [120]:116.1) "When others harm them, they do not retaliate, they do not become angry, they do not even conceive of the idea of an enemy." (W 115.5)

42 The first is "samādhi that understands well the signs of conventional truths." The second is "samādhi that observes an object that is complete suchness." The third is "samādhi that observes both conventional and ultimate objects." (W, vol. di [120]:120.7)

43 "'Exaggeration' is apprehending the non-existent as existent. 'Deprecation' is denigration of the existent as non-existent. Imputations are only exaggerated and are without denigration, because they are completely non-existent. Other-dependent phenomena are not exaggerated, because their natures exist. They are not deprecated, because they exist only as conceptualizations of the unreal. Thoroughly established natures are not exaggerated because they exist in reality. [With respect to them] there is only deprecation." (W, vol. di [120]:123.4, quoting Asvabhāva's commentary on MS)

44 Conventional truths (kun-rdzob-bden-pa, saṃvṛti-satya) include "whatever is produced from conditions, exists only imputedly, arises from conceptuality like illusory things, is expressible in words, and is like a dream." (W, vol. di [120]:126.7, quoting the bsTan-bcos-shin-tu-rgyas-pa-brgya-pa) The five topics of knowledge (rig-pa'i-gnas-lnga, pañca-vidyā-sthāna) are philosophy, logic, grammar, medicine, and knowledge of crafts. (See W 127.3)

45 These are the "individual capabilities of the five aspects of characteristics" that the Buddha describes in his answer to this question. (W, vol. di [120]:130.2-133)

46 In the analogy comparing sentient beings with hungry ghosts, water is analogous to the resources of Bodhisattvas. Due to the Bodhisattvas' great compassion and merit, these resources are pure and vast. But the karma of sentient beings distorts the Bodhisattvas' beneficial gifts, just as the karma of hungry ghosts is said to cause them not to see refreshing water or to misperceive it as something

unclean. (W, vol. di [120]:144.2. See also W 141–45 for a lengthy discussion of this passage; WE 212; and S, vol. II, 250–51)

47 All afflictions fall within two categories: (1) innate (*lhan-cig-skyes-pa*) and (2) arisen from imputations (*kun-brtags-las-byung-ba*). Innate afflictions are “afflictions that are objects to be abandoned by [a path of] meditation.” Afflictions arisen from imputation are “afflictions that are objects to be abandoned by [a path of] seeing.” [The “assistors that are completely destroyed” mentioned in this passage in the *Sūtra* are “arisen from imputations.”] Prior to the first *Bodhisattva* stage these two types of afflictions accompany one another, but when one attains the path of seeing the non-innate afflictions are completely destroyed. (W, vol. di [120]:156.1)

48 “Errant tendencies that are like something on the outer layer of skin are abandoned on the first [*Bodhisattva*] stage. Those that are like something existing in subcutaneous skin are abandoned on the eighth stage. Those that are like something existing in the marrow are abandoned on the *Tathāgata* stage.” (B, vol. jo [206]:37.3)

49 According to one explanation, one abandons errant tendencies that are like something existing on the outer layer of skin during the first period of incalculable eons; during the second period one abandons those that are like something existing in subcutaneous skin; and during the third period one abandons those that are like something existing in the marrow. (W, vol. di [120]:170.2) According to another explanation, one abandons the first type during the first two periods of incalculable eons, abandons the second type during the third period of incalculable eons, and abandons the third type after having entered the *Tathāgata* stage. The second explanation accords with the words of the *Sūtra*. (W 170.5)

50 “This is because they generate afflictions having understood the faults of the afflictions. This is called ‘the characteristic of absence of affliction’.” (W, vol. di [120]:178.3)

51 “[*Bodhisattvas*] have afflictions but are not overcome by them. Thus the afflictions cannot generate suffering, and so these [*Bodhisattvas*] are called faultless.” (W, vol. di [120]:178.7) “Although these *Bodhisattvas* have not abandoned the afflictions, the harmful consequences of the afflictions are not generated, like poison that has been overcome through mantras and medicine.” (W 179.1, quoting AS)

Bodhisattvas on the first through seventh stages “generate afflictions so that they can overcome and eliminate them in order to gain mastery over their own consciousnesses.” Because they are motivated to help sentient beings, they are able to turn even afflictions to their advantage. (W 180.4)

52 “Collective stages” include the four purities and eleven limbs. “Collections of discriminations” (*‘du-shes-bsdus, saṃjñā-saṃgraha*) is the name of the eleven stages mentioned previously, and “discriminations” are “names.” The “discordances” of the stages refer to the twenty-two obscurations and the eleven errant tendencies. The “distinctive arisings” refer to “the distinctive superiority of Bodhisattvas’ births.” “Aspirations” refer to the three aspirations. The “trainings” of the stages include “the various doors [of training] in the perfections.” (W, vol. di [120]:187.2)

Notes to Chapter Ten

1 This great Bodhisattva is named Mañjuśrī (*‘Soft Glory*) because “his mind [that realizes] the truth of suchness is permanently peaceful and isolated, benefits all enemies and friends, and does not harm them.” (W, vol. di [120]:193.6) He is “endowed with the meaning of ‘glory’ because he is revered and worshipped by all worldlings and is praised by everyone.” (W citing a commentary on the *Buddha-bhūmi-sūtra*) “In reality this Bodhisattva is a Tathāgata, but in order to teach Buddha’s doctrine he displays the form of a Bodhisattva.” (W 194.1) Considered an embodiment of wisdom, Mañjuśrī is strongly associated with the Perfection of Wisdom Sūtras and is often an interlocutor in them.

2 “Well-established transformation of the basis” (*gnas-gyur-pa-yang-dag-par-grub-pa, āśrayaparāvṛtti-samudāgama*) refers to Tathāgatas, “who are of the character of the Dharmakāya, which is thoroughly established in the sense of being an exalted wisdom of reality and suchness that is unerring and changeless.” (B, vol. jo [206]:48.3)

Asaṅga (AS, ed. Pradhan, 76.9–.11) states that there are three types of transformation of the basis: transformation of the basis of mind (*cittāśraya-parivṛtti*), transformation of the basis of path (*mārgāśraya-parivṛtti*), and transformation of the basis of errant tendencies (*dausthulyāśraya-parivṛtti*). According to Jinaputra’s commentary

on this passage (Abhidharmasamuccaya-bhāṣya, ed. Tatia, 93.15), the first involves freeing the mind (which is of the nature of clear light) from all adventitious afflictions. The second involves transforming mundane paths into supramundane paths. Through this process, one transforms the basis, which is the path, and brings the path to completion. The third type involves transforming consciousness in the sense of eliminating the obstructions to omniscience. (See also S, vol. II, 261–65 and COM 138)

3 The Dharmakāya is “inconceivable” (bsam-gyis-mi-khyab-pa, acintya) because it is free from elaborations (i.e., arising, cessation, and so forth), and because “that character of transformation of the basis of the Dharmakāya is free from all obstructions, permanently abides in suchness, and is changeless. Therefore, it lacks the manifest activity of actions and afflictions.” (W, vol. di [120]:197.1)

“Freedom from elaborations’ (spros-pa-med-pa, niḥprapañca) has the following aspects: It is without cessation, birth, permanence, and annihilation; it is not of diverse meanings or one single meaning; and it is without coming and going.” (B, vol. jo [206]:50.6)

“Elaborations” refer to “the four types of elaborations of existence, non-existence, and so forth [i.e., the tetralemma or *catuṣ-koṭi*]; and to elaborations such as, ‘Everything is permanent,’ ‘[everything] is impermanent’ and so forth.” (W, vol. di [120]:196.7)

4 “Liberation bodies” (rnam-par-grol-ba’i-lus, vimukti-kāya) are “bodies liberated from the arising of afflictive obstructions.” (B, vol. jo [206]:52.3) Asvabhāva states that liberation bodies result from mere separation from the bonds of the afflictions. He compares this to a common person who, upon being released from shackles, experiences the cessation of the suffering they had caused. By contrast, the Dharmakāya is compared to a prince who, upon being released from prison, not only experiences the cessation of suffering, but is also crowned king and obtains dominion over the entire kingdom. (commentary to MS I.48, P 5552, vol. li [106]:262b.6–263a.2)

“The Dharmakāya, which has immeasurable distinctively superior qualities, is not to be known through examples and so forth.” (W, vol. di [120]:201.1) Because the Dharmakāya is incomparable, nothing else remotely resembles it. (B, vol. jo [206]:52.7)

5 “When previously abiding in the practices of the [Bodhisattva] stages, Tathāgatas achieved various types of qualities for the sake of

sentient beings. They completed the cultivation of these qualities and achieved the powers resulting from them." Through cultivating immeasurably good qualities and great power, they achieved the ability to benefit sentient beings by taking limitless forms appropriate to the training needs of sentient beings. (W, vol. di [120]:203.1)

In Hsüan-tsang's Chinese translation of this Sūtra, the phrase "The characteristics of the Nirmāṇakāya have birth and arising" is found before "The Dharmakāya has no genesis." (See W 203.5)

6 "It is called 'skillful' because the three types of charismatic actions (phrin-las) that arise from exalted wisdom that accomplishes activities are in accordance with the faculties of sentient beings. It is called 'method' because application is continuous." (W, vol. di [120]:204.1, citing a commentary on the Buddha-bhūmi-sūtra)

7 The first category refers to obtaining the twelve forms of doctrinal teachings (see p. 151 of this Sūtra). The second refers to taking refuge in the Buddha, Dharma, and Sangha. The third category refers to training in ethics, samādhi, and wisdom. The fourth refers to the enlightenments of the three vehicles. (W, vol. di [120]:228.7, citing a commentary on the bsTan-bcos-rnam-par-bshad-pa)

8 The first category refers to phenomena that are included among compounded phenomena, such as the five aggregates, the constituents, and the sense spheres. The second refers to the twelve links of dependent origination. "Them" refers to just the five aggregates. The third and fourth categories refer to conceptions of true existence: "Due to these very conceptions, through the power of conceiving the afflicted aggregates as having a self [of persons] and conceiving them as having [a self of] phenomena, this serves as a cause of engagement with cyclic existence in the future." (W, vol. di [120]:232.6) These first four members are "categories of pure worldly phenomena," and the next twenty-five are "categories of pure supramundane phenomena." (W 233.6)

9 The fifth category refers to "wisdoms [arisen from] hearing that belong to the desire realm. These are mental designations with respect to teachings. They are also mental designations with respect to the meaning of what is expressed and objects of mindful establishments."

The sixth category "indicates the category of wisdoms [arisen from] reflection. This is taking to mind these very objects of wisdom

[arisen from] hearing with ardent effort after having perceived them in terms of unitary truth."

The seventh category "indicates the samādhi of application. This is mentally abiding in the samādhi of application through the power of wisdom [arisen from] reflection."

The eighth category "indicates actual samādhi. This is abiding blissfully in this life after having attained the six clairvoyances."

The ninth category "indicates the twenty-one categories of types of things that transcend the world."

The tenth category has three aspects: "comprehending the basis [of suffering], beginning with error; comprehending the basis [of suffering caused by] mistaken establishment with respect to external sentient beings, beginning with conceiving them as sentient beings; and comprehending the basis [of suffering] due to separation from internal conceit."

"The category of the basis of meditation, the category of actualization, and the category of meditation [11-13] respectively indicate teachings concerning the categories of abandonment of [true] sources [of suffering], actualization of [true] cessations, and cultivation of [true] paths. Moreover, because true sources [of suffering] are the two afflictions that are discordant with meditation, this is the category of the basis of meditation. Because true cessations are uncompounded, this is the category of actualization. The paths of the Āryas [comprise] the category of meditation."

The next four categories (14-17) refer to teachings about the paths of seeing. The fourteenth refers to "correct paths" "because through the power of seeing the path as it really is, one does not degenerate from the two types of paths of seeing: (1) correct, and (2) having signs." The fifteenth refers to "a path of seeing having signs." The sixteenth refers to "the category of objects that are objects of observation of a path of seeing having signs." The seventeenth refers to "individually analyzing in terms of abandoning afflictions that are objects to be abandoned by a path of seeing that has signs; and afflictions not yet abandoned that are objects to be abandoned by [a path of] meditation."

The next six (18-23) refer to teachings about paths of meditation. There are differing explanations with respect to each of these: With respect to "the category of being distracted from that [meditation]," one scholar's opinion is that from the time of having passed beyond

the path of seeing up to the time of entering the path of meditation, one can become mentally distracted although one is not afflicted. With respect to categories nineteen and twenty: "These are activities of exertion that abandon afflictions that are to be abandoned by a path of meditation in the desire realm when one abides in samādhi." The twenty-first category refers to "unobstructed paths abandoning afflictions that are to be abandoned by [paths of] meditation in the form and formless realms." The twenty-second category refers to uninterrupted paths and paths of release that abandon afflictions that are to be abandoned by form realm [paths of] meditation." The twenty-third category refers to "an uninterrupted path that abandons afflictions that are to be abandoned by a formless realm [path of] meditation: the vajra-like samādhi."

The next three categories (24–27) refer to "teachings concerning paths of no more learning." The twenty-fourth includes "exhaustible and unproduced knowledges that are included among correct exalted wisdoms." The twenty-fifth includes "exhaustible and unproduced exalted wisdoms that apprehend [their objects] by way of exalted wisdoms of subsequent attainment." The twenty-sixth refers to "meditation on suchness when one is close to entering a [nirvāṇa] without remainder." The twenty-seventh refers to "the thorough passing beyond sorrow of basis-consciousness itself through meditative absorptions that are cessations—due to former meditative absorptions that are cessations—when one is close to entering a [nirvāṇa] without remainder."

The twenty-eighth and twenty-ninth respectively refer to "distinctive superiority and absence of distinctive superiority." The "disciplinary doctrine that has been well explained" refers to the teachings of the three baskets (sde-snod-gsum, tripiṭaka, i.e., Vinaya, Sūtra, and Abhidharma). "Discipline" ('dul-ba) refers specifically to Vinaya. (W, vol. di [120]:234.3–241.3)

10 These bases of defeat (pham-pa'i-gnas, pārājāyika-sthāna) are the four root offences resulting in expulsion from the monastic order: non-celibacy, taking what is not given, killing, and lying. Citing YB, W gives a different fourfold list: "attachment to property and respect and elevating oneself and deprecating others; not giving material goods and doctrine to sentient beings due to miserliness; beating and speaking harsh words to sentient beings with a belligerent mind; and deprecating the Bodhisattva canon and teaching false

doctrines." They are called bases of defeat "because when the faults of these four weighty [offences] arise, without question those [who commit them] come under the influence of afflictions that defeat them and overpower Bodhisattvas." (W, vol. di [120]:247.6)

11 "Faults" refers to teachings concerning the three contaminations, the four fetters, the causes of thorough entanglements, the ten complete bindings, and so forth. (W, vol. di [120]:260.4)

12 "Good qualities" (yon-tan, *guṇa*) refers to teachings concerning qualities such as clairvoyances, liberations, samādhis, powers, fearlessnesses, and so forth. (W, vol. di [120]:260.6)

13 "Compounded phenomena are not autonomous with respect to production and subsequent designation of conventions. Indicating their dependence upon causes and effects—by way of dependence upon cause and effect and their arising and subsequent conventional designations—is 'analysis of dependence'." (B, vol. jo [206]:271.4) "An example is a sprout arising in dependence upon a seed, season, water, and a field, or a consciousness arising in dependence upon a sense power, an object, and a [former moment of] mind." (W, vol. di [120]:309.5)

14 "Analysis of performance of functions" refers to "indicating the functions of phenomena." (B, vol. jo [206]:271.2) "What are the characteristics of analysis of performance of functions? Whatever are the causes and whatever are the conditions—in terms of which the attainment or birth of phenomena function—are [the subject matter of] analysis of performance of functions. 'Attainment or non-establishment' are just differentiations of agent. . . . Attainment refers to both acting in order to gain something—obtaining a mere seed—and attaining the entity of the fruit. What is obtaining a mere seed? It is [obtaining] the virtuous roots for attaining the level of an Ārya and its fruits; performing meritorious activity, which leads to attainment of the happinesses of men and gods; moral wrong-doing, which leads to experiencing the sufferings of bad transmigrations; and causes that are concordant with what is neutral and whatever has the predispositions that are seeds of those. . . . Whatever is indicated as being the performance of functions of phenomena is [the subject matter of] 'analysis of performance of functions'." (B 279.5)

15 "Analysis of logical correctness" involves "indicating the reasonings that establish individual meanings through the correctness of

the three valid cognizers [tshad-ma, pramāṇa, i.e., direct perception, inference, and believable scriptures]." (B, vol. jo [206]:271.2)

16 One directly observes the reasoning concerning impermanence through reasonings concerning the impermanence of a basis. One realizes what is subtle based on understanding what is coarse with respect to a particular basis. Thus, one understands subtle impermanence in dependence on first understanding coarse impermanence; one understands that there will be effects of karma in the future due to observing the varieties of suffering that are present now; and one understands subtle selflessness in dependence upon understanding coarse selflessness. (W, vol. di [120]:281.5)

17 "The masters of this country . . . state that whatever is an exalted wisdom that observes suchness is 'omniscience' (thams-cad-mkhyen-pa, sarvajña). Whatever is exalted wisdom that abides in conventions is an 'exalted knower of all aspects' (rnam-pa-thams-cad-mkhyen-pa, sarvākāra-jñatā). (W, vol. di [120]:284.7)

"'Omniscience' refers to the general characteristic (spy'i-mtshan-nyid), and 'exalted knower of all aspects' refers to the specific characteristic (bye-brag-gi-mtshan-nyid). The first is cause, and the second is effect. Also, the first refers to 'destruction of ignorance that obscures all phenomena', and the second refers to 'destruction of ignorance in terms of individual analysis of various types of phenomena'." (W 288.5, citing another scholar's position)

18 "The four fearlessnesses are: fearlessness with respect to being manifestly and completely enlightened with respect to all phenomena; fearlessness with respect to knowing that all contaminations have been extinguished; fearlessness with respect to teaching definitive scriptures that are uninterrupted and [contain] unchangeable doctrines; and fearlessness with respect to the nature of the path of renunciation on which one attains all wonders." (B, vol. jo [206]:318.1. See also S, vol. II, 286, 298 and COM 169)

19 The "seven characteristics of impure reasonings" are rarely described in Buddhist literature. W gives a technical discussion of them too lengthy and complex to reproduce here. Note, however, that unlike the "pure reasonings" that rely on "direct valid cognition," the "impure reasonings" rely on various types of "objects of observation." One cannot prove what one is trying to establish through these impure reasonings. "Because these seven character-

istics have faults, they are 'impure'." (W, vol. di [120]:296.6. See also Khri-srong-lde-btsan's bKa'-yang-dag-pa'i-tshad-ma-las-mdo-btus-pa, NE 4352; and Mahāvīyutpatti CC:6-12)

20 "Because they are discordant with the mode of the meaning of suchness, their characteristics are not established." (B, vol. jo [206]:347.3) This means that they are not renowned in the world; they contradict common sense; and they also contradict believable scriptures. Thus they are worthless as reasonings, are discordant with correct reasonings, and should not be used. (W, vol. di [120]:305.6)

21 "The analysis of reality" (chos-nyid-kyi-rigs-pa, dharmatā-yukti) refers to analysis of what is known from beginningless time as the nature of phenomena abiding in specific and general characteristics. An example is stating that fire burns, water moistens, and wind moves. (W, vol. di [120]:310.1)

22 "The qualities of overcoming afflictions through mundane paths, nirvāṇa that achieves complete abandonment of afflictions through supramundane paths, and compounded qualities that are manifestly established by those [constitute] the 'characteristic of attaining its fruits'." (W, vol. di [120]:311.5)

23 "Predispose" (bag-la-nyal, anuśāya) refers to the "seeds" (sa-bon, bīja), specifically seeds of the two types of mistaken apprehension: apprehension of a self of persons and apprehension of a self of phenomena. These are the two types of obstructions: afflictive obstructions and obstructions to omniscience. (W, vol. di [120]:317.7)

24 "Mind" refers to the basis-consciousness. "Thought" refers to afflicted thought. "Consciousness" refers to the six consciousnesses: the five sense consciousnesses and mental consciousness. (W, vol. di [120]:322.6) "Tathāgatas do not have conceptual mental activity, but—due to the power of wisdom from the previous causal period—mental phenomena arise without exertion: like emanations, for instance. [Tathāgatas] manifest [whatever is suitable] in accordance with their thought due to the power of samādhi, and not due to the power of conceptual mental activity." (W 324.1)

25 It is not suitable to say that these emanations have minds, and it is not suitable to say that they do not. That they are not autonomous means that they arise in dependence upon the seeds of types of views of different sentient beings in accordance with their natures. According to YB, the Sambhogakāya and Nirmāṇakāya manifesta-

tions do not have real minds and mental factors, but do have phenomena that appear like minds and mental factors. The emanations of Tathāgatas are like things having minds, but the minds controlling them are external to them, and so the emanations themselves cannot be said to have real minds. They are also not said to be actually existent "because they lack the abilities of physical faculties of emanations and faculties in terms of phenomena that are minds and mental factors and so forth." (W, vol di [120]:330.4)

26 According to ancient cosmology, fire-crystals are radiant, hot and clear, and produce the light of the sun. Water-crystals produce the light of the moon and are cold and clear. (See Kośa III:60b and W, vol. di [120]:339.7)

27 "Kṣatriyas or Brahmans, and those like great śāla trees" refers to humans who are well-endowed with wealth, fame, and attractiveness. (W, vol. di [120]:341.7. See also Kośa IV:108c-d)

28 These pure realms are not included among the three realms, but are realms that transcend them and are produced from unsurpassable virtuous roots. (W, vol. di [120]:345.3) "In these pure lands the three bad migrations do not exist, nor does [there exist] anything called 'the three poisons', 'the two [lesser] vehicles', or 'man' and 'woman'. The Buddhas of these pure lands have the thirty-two marks of a great being and appear in worldly realms through the power of their luminescence, emanate innumerable bodies in each moment, benefit sentient beings in worldly realms more numerous than the sands of the Ganges river, and then return to their former abodes." (W 345.3, citing a commentary on the Perfection of Wisdom)



- JNG *Ārya-saṃdhinirmocana-sūtreārya-maitreyakevala-parivarta-bhāṣya* by Jñānagarbha, in *Two Commentaries on the Saṃdhinirmocana-sūtra*, translated by John Powers
- KJ *Kun-gzhi-rtsa-'grel* by Tsong-kha-pa
- Kośa *Abhidharmakośa-bhāṣya* by Vasubandhu, translated by Louis de la Vallée Poussin
- KY *Kun-gzhi'i-yig-cha* by Gung-thang
- ME *Meditation on Emptiness* by Jeffrey Hopkins
- MS *Mahāyānasamgraha* by Asaṅga
- MV *Madhyāntavibhāṅga-ṭīkā* by Vasubandhu, in *Seven Works of Vasubandhu*, translated by Stefan Anacker
- NE Nyingma Edition of the sDe-dge bKa'-gyur and bsTan'-gyur. The text numbers cited from the Nyingma Edition are equivalent to Tohoku Catalogue text numbers.
- P Peking Edition of the bKa'-gyur and bsTan'-gyur
- S *La Somme du Grand Véhicule d'Asaṅga*, the Mahāyāna-samgraha, translated by Étienne Lamotte
- SB Śrāvakabhūmi by Asaṅga
- T Taishō Edition of the Buddhist Canon
- VJ *Vijñaptimātratāsiddhi* by Hsüan-tsang in *Vijñaptimātratā-siddhi: La Siddhi de Hiuan-tsang traduite et annotée*, translated by Louis de la Vallée Poussin
- VM *Visuddhimagga* by Buddhaghosa, in *The Path of Purification*, translated by Bhikkhu Ñāṇamoli
- VS *Viniścaya-saṃgrahanī* by Asaṅga
- W *Ārya-gambhīra-saṃdhinirmocana-sūtra-ṭīkā* by Wonch'uk. Page numbers are referenced to the Karmapae Choedhey edition of the sDe-dge bsTan'-gyur.
- WE *Ways of Enlightenment*
- WZ *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde Süd- und Ostriasiens*
- YB *Yogacaryābhūmi* by Asaṅga

Bibliography

Editions of the Saṃdhinirmocana consulted for this translation:

sDe-dge edition: Nyingma Edition of the sDe-dge bKa'-gyur and bsTan'-gyur, vol. 18, text 106. Berkeley: Dharma Publishing, 1980.

sTog Palace edition: *The Tog Palace Edition of the Tibetan Kanjur*, vol. 63: 1-160. Leh: Smanrtsis Shesrig Dpemzod, 1975-1978.

Them-spangs-ma edition: Photocopy of the edition brought to Japan by Ekai Kawaguchi, now kept in the Tōyō Bunko Library in Tokyo.

Peking edition: vol. 29, text 774. Tokyo: Tibetan Tripiṭaka Research Institute, Suzuki Research Foundation, 1958.

Lhasa edition: vol. mdo nga. Microfiche distributed by the Institute for Advanced Studies of World Religions.

sNar-thang edition: vol. 51. Microfiche distributed by the Institute for Advanced Studies of World Religions.

Co-ne edition: vol. 5, Kanjur. Microfilm copy from the Library of Congress, Washington, D.C.

Viniścaya-saṃgrahaṇī (P 5539, vol. 110: 233-vol. 111: 61; vol. 111: 63-121; NE 4038), quotes most of the Sūtra.

Stein Tib. 194, Tun-huang manuscript in the old translation style containing most of the seventh chapter.

Stein Tib. 683, Tun-huang manuscript in the old translation style containing a portion of the seventh chapter.

Chieh-shen-mi-ching, the Chinese translation by Hsüan-tsang, T 676.

Shen-mi-chieh-t'o-ching, the Chinese translation by Bodhiruci, T 675.

Chieh-chieh-ching, the Chinese translation by Paramārtha, T 677.

Canonical Commentaries on the Sūtra

Asaṅga. Ārya-saṃdhinirmocana-bhāṣya ('Phags-pa-dgongs-pa-nges-par-'grel-pa'i-rnam-par-bshad-pa). P 5481, vol. 104: 1-7; NE 3981. In *Two Commentaries on the Saṃdhinirmocana-sūtra*, translated by John Powers. Lewiston and Queenston: The Edwin Mellen Press, 1992.

Byang-chub-rdzu-'phrul (Cog-ro-klu'i-rgyal-mtshan). Ārya-saṃdhinirmocana-sūtra-vyākhyāna ('Phags-pa-dgongs-pa-nges-par-'grel-pa'i-mdo'i-rnam-par-bshad-pa). Delhi: Delhi Karmapae Choedhey, 1985, vol. cho [205]-vol. jo [206]; NE 4358; P 5845, vol. 144: 191-vol. 145: 89.

Jñānagarbha. Ārya-saṃdhinirmocana-sūtreārya-maitreyakevala-parivarta-bhāṣya ('Phags-pa-dgongs-pa-nges-par-'grel-pa'i-mdo-las-'phags-pa-byams-pa'i-le'u-nyi-tshe-bshad-pa). P 5535, vol. 109: 196-211; NE 4033. In *Two Commentaries on the Saṃdhinirmocana-sūtra*, translated by John Powers. Lewiston and Queenston: The Edwin Mellen Press, 1992.

Wonch'uk (Tibetan: Wen-tshegs; Chinese: Yüan-ts'e). Ārya-gambhīra-saṃdhinirmocana-sūtra-ṭīkā ('Phags-pa-dgongs-pa-zab-mo-nges-par-'grel-pa'i-mdo'i-rgya-cher-'grel-pa). Delhi: Delhi Karmapae Choedhey, Gyalwae Sungrab Partun Khang, 1985, vol. ti [118]-vol. di [120]; NE 4016; P 5517, vol. 106: 1-345.

Works by Indian Authors

Asaṅga. Abhidharmasamuccaya (Chos-mngon-pa-kun-las-btus-pa). P 5550, vol. 112: 236-72; NE 4049; *Abhidharmasamuccaya of Asaṅga*, edited by Prahlād Pradhān. Santiniketan: Viśva-Bhāratī Studies #12, 1950; *Le Compendium de la Super-Doctrine d'Asaṅga (Abhidharmasamuccaya)*, translated by Walpola Rahula. Paris: Publications de l'École Française d'Extrême-Orient, LXXVIII, 1971; reprint 1980.

—. Bodhisattvabhūmi (Byang-chub-sems-pa'i-sa): Yogacaryā-bhūmau-bodhisattvabhūmi, P 5538, vol. 110: 131-232; NE 4037.

—. Mahāyānasamgraha (Theg-pa-chen-po-bsdus-ba): P 5549, vol. 112: 215-36; NE 4048. In *La Somme du Grand Véhicule d'Asaṅga (Mahāyānasamgraha)*, translated by Étienne Lamotte. 2 vols. Louvain: Université de Louvain, 1938.

———. Śrāvakabhūmi (Nyan-thos-kyi-sa): Yogacaryābhūmau Śrāvaka-
bhūmi, P 5537, vol. 110: 35–130; NE 4036.

———. Viniścaya-saṃgrahaṇī (rNam-par-gtan-la-dbab-pa-bsdu-ba):
Yogacaryābhūmi-viniścaya-saṃgraha, P 5539, vol. 110: 233–vol. 111:
61; vol. 111: 63–121; NE 4038.

———. Yogacaryā-bhūmi (rNal-'byor-spyod-pa'i-sa). P 5536, vol. 109:
211–vol. 110: 33; NE 4035.

Buddhaghosa. Visuddhimagga. In *The Path of Purification*, translated
by Bhikkhu Ñāṇamoli. 2 vols. Berkeley & London: Shambhala, 1976.

Jinaputra. Abhidharmasamuccaya-bhāṣya (Chos-mngon-pa-kun-las-
btus-pa'i-bshad-pa). P 5554, vol. 113: 83–141; NE 4053. *Abhidharma-
samuccaya-bhāṣyam*, edited by Nathmal Tatia. Patna: K. P. Jayaswal
Research Institute, 1976 (Tibetan Sanskrit Works Series, #17).

Kamalaśīla. Bhāvanākrama. NE 3917. *Bhāvanākrama III*, edited by
G. Tucci, in *Minor Buddhist Texts*, Part III. Rome: Istituto Italiano
per il Medio ed Estremo Oriente (Serie Oriental Roma), 1971.

Mahāvyutpatti. NE 4346. *Mahāvyutpatti*, prepared by R. Sakaki.
2 vols. Tokyo: Suzuki Research Foundation, 1916.

Sthiramati. Madhyāntavibhāṅga-ṭīkā (dBus-dang-mtha'-rnam-par-
'byed-pa'i-'grel-bshad). P 5534, vol. 109: 136–96; NE 4032.

Vasubandhu. Abhidharmakośa-bhāṣya. NE 4090. *Abhidharmakośa-
bhāṣyam*, translated by Louis de la Vallée Poussin, English translation
by Leo M. Pruden, 4 vols. Berkeley: Asian Humanities Press, 1988.

———. Madhyāntavibhāṅga-ṭīkā (dBus-dang-mtha'-rnam-par-'byed-
pa'i-'grel-pa). P 5528, vol. 112: 121–33; NE 4027. In *Seven Works of
Vasubandhu*, edited and translated by Stefan Anacker, 191–286 and
424–63. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1984.

———. Mahāyānasamgraha-bhāṣya (Theg-pa-chen-po-bsdus-pa'i-'grel-
pa). P 5551, vol. 112: 272–307; NE 4050.

———. Trīṃśikā-kārikā (Sum-cu-pa'i-tshig-le-'ur-byas-pa). P 5556, vol.
113: 231–33; NE 4055. In *Seven Works of Vasubandhu*, edited and
translated by Stefan Anacker, 181–90 and 422–23. Delhi: Motilal
Banarsidass, 1984.

———. Trisvabhāvanirdeśa (Rang-bzhin-gsum-nges-par-bstan-pa).
P 5559, vol. 113: 236–37; NE 4058. In *Seven Works of Vasubandhu*,

edited and translated by Stefan Anacker, 287-98 and 464-66. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1984.

——. Vādaavidhi. "Vasubandhu's Vādaavidhi," edited and translated by Erich Frauwallner. WZ 1 (1957): 104-34. See also *Vasubandhu: Three Aspects*, translated by Stefan Anacker, 87-98. Doctoral dissertation, University of Wisconsin. Ann Arbor: University Microfilms, 1969.

——. Vīmśatikā-kārikā and Vīmśatikā-vṛtti (Nyi-shu-pa'i-tshig-le'-ur-byas-pa and Nyi-shu-pa'i-'grel-pa). P 5557, vol. 113: 233-34; NE 4056 and 4057. In *Seven Works of Vasubandhu*, edited and translated by Stefan Anacker, 157-80 and 413-21. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1984.

Works by Tibetan Authors

Khri-srong-lde-btsan. bKa'-yang-dag-pa'i-tshad-ma-las-mdo-btus-pa. NE 4352.

Gung-thang-dkon-mchog-bstan-pa'i-sgron-me (Gung-thang). Kun-gzhi'i-yig-cha. *Collected Works*, vol. 2. New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1972.

——. bsTan-bcos-legs-bshad-snying-po-las-sems-tsam-skor-gyi-mchan-'grel-rtsoṃ-'phro-rnam-rig-gzhung-brgya'i-sṅang-ba. *Collected Works*, vol. 1: 725-876. New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1975.

——. Drang-nges-rnam-'byed-kyi-dka'-'grel-rtsoṃ-'phro. Sarnath: Guru Deva, 1965.

Tāranātha. rGya-gar-chos-'byung. *Tāranātha's History of Buddhism in India*, translated by Lama Chimpa and Alaka Chattopadhyaya. Simla: Indian Institute of Advanced Studies, 1970; reprint Calcutta: K. P. Bagchi and Co., 1980.

dPal-'byor-lhun-grub, gNyal-ston. Legs-bshad-snying-po'i-dka'-'grel-bstan-pa'i-sgron-me. Buxaduar: Sera Monastery, 1968.

Blo-bzang-phun-tshogs, Ser-shul-dge-bshes. Drang-nges-rnam-'byed-kyi-zin-bris-zab-don-gsal-ba'i-sgron-me. Mysore: Sera Byes Monastery, n.d.

dBus-pa-blo-gsal. Grub-pa'i-mtha'-rnam-par-bshad-pa'i-mdzod. In *Blo gsal grub mtha'*, edited and partially translated by Katsumi Mimaki. Kyoto: Zinbun Kogaku Kenkyūshō, 1982.

Tsong-kha-pa-blo-bzang-grags-pa. Kun-gzhi-dka'-grel. Sarnath: Gelugpa Students' Welfare Committee, Central Institute of Higher Tibetan Studies, 1984.

——. Kun-gzhi-rtsa'-grel. Sarnath: Pleasure of Elegant Sayings Printing Press, 1984.

——. Kun-gzhi-rtsa-ba. In *The Meaning of Mind in the Mahāyāna Buddhist Philosophy of Mind Only*, translated by Joe B. Wilson. Doctoral dissertation, University of Virginia. Ann Arbor: University Microfilms, 1984, DER 85-03465.

——. Legs-bshad-snying-po. Sarnath: Pleasure of Elegant Sayings Printing Press, 1979. In *The Central Philosophy of Tibet*, translated by Robert A. F. Thurman. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1991.

Rabten, Geshe (Tre-hor-dge-bshes-rta-mgrin-rab-brtan). Drang-nges-rnam-'byed-legs-bshad-snying-po-dka'-gnad-rnams-mchan-bur-bkod-pa-gzur-gnas-blo-dga'-ston. Delhi: LHun-grub-chos-grags, 1978.

bSod-nams-grags-pa, Paṇ-chen. Legs-bshad-snying-po'i-dka'-gnad-dogs-gcod. Indian blockprint, n.d.

A-khu-blo-gros-rgya-mtsho. Drang-ba-dang-nges-pa'i-don-rnam-par-'byed-pa'i-bstan-bcos-legs-bshad-snying-po'i-dka'-grel-rin-chen-sgron-me. Delhi: Kesang Thabkhes, 1982.

Work by Chinese Author

Hsüan-tsang. Ch'eng wei shih lun (Vijñaptimātratāsiddhi). T 1585. *Vijñaptimātratāsiddhi: La Siddhi de Hiuan-tsang traduite et annoté*, translated by Louis de la Vallée Poussin. 2 vols. Paris: Paul Geuthner, 1928; *Ch'eng wei shih lun: The Doctrine of Mere Consciousness*, translated by Wei Tat. Hong Kong: Dai Nippon Printing Co., 1973.

Works by Contemporary Scholars

Davidson, Ronald Mark. *Buddhist Systems of Transformation*. Doctoral dissertation, University of California, Berkeley. Ann Arbor: University Microfilms, 1986, DES 86-09992.

de la Vallée Poussin, Louis. "Le Petit Traité de Vasubandhu-Nāgārjuna sur les trois natures" (*Trisvabhāvanirdeśa*). *Mélanges Chinoises et Bouddhiques* 2 (1933): 147-61.

———. "Vasubandhu l'Ancien." *BCLS* 16 (1930): 15-39.

Demiéville, Paul. "Le Chapitre de la *Bodhisattvabhūmi* sur la Perfection du Dhyāna." *Rocznik Orientalistyczny* 21 (1957): 109-28; in *Choix d'Études Bouddhiques, 1929-1970*: 300-319. Leiden: Brill, 1973.

———. "Review of Étienne Lamotte, *Saṃdhinirmocana-sūtra*." *Journal Asiatique* 228 (1936): 645-56.

Eckel, Malcolm. *Jñānagarbha's Commentary on the Distinction Between the Two Truths*. New York: State University of New York, 1987.

Frauwallner, Erich. *On the Date of the Buddhist Master of the Law Vasubandhu*. Rome: Instituto Italiano per il Medio ed Estremo Oriente (Serie Orientale Roma), 1951.

———. "Landmarks in the History of Indian Logic." *WZ* 5 (1961): 129-32.

Guenther, Herbert V. *Philosophy and Psychology in the Abhidharma*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1978.

Hakamaya, Noriaki. "A Consideration of the *Byams shus kyi le'u*, from the historical point of view." *Indogaku Bukkyō-gaku Kenkyū* 14.1 (Dec. 1975): 20-30.

———. "The Old and New Translations of the *Saṃdhinirmocana-sūtra*: Some Notes on the History of the Early Tibetan Translations." *Komazawa Daigaku Bukkyō-gakubu Kenkyūkiyō* 42 (1984): 1-17.

Honda, Megumu, with Johannes Rahder. *Annotated Translation of the Daśabhūmika-sūtra*. New Delhi: International Academy of Indian Culture, 1968 (Śatapiṭaka Series #74).

Hopkins, Jeffrey. *Compassion in Tibetan Buddhism*. London: Rider, 1980.

———. *Meditation on Emptiness*. London: Wisdom Publications, 1983.

———. with Geshe Lhundup Sopa. *Practice and Theory of Tibetan Buddhism*. New York: Grove Press, 1976.

Iida, Shotaro. *The Great Silla Monks of Korea*. Seoul: Yemun Ch'ulp'ansa, 1988.

———. "The Three Stūpas of Ch'ang An." *Papers of the First International Conference on Korean Studies*, 484-97. Seoul: The Academy of Korean Studies, 1980.

———. "Who Can Best *Re-turn* the Dharma-cakra: A Controversy Between Wonch'uk (623–696) and K'uei-chi (632–682)." *Indogaku Bukkyō-gaku Kenkyū* 34.2 (1986): 948–51.

Inaba, Shōju. "On Chos-grub's Translation of the *Chieh-shen-mi-ching-shu*." In *Buddhist Thought and Asian Civilization*, edited by Leslie S. Kawamura and Keith Scott, 105–13. Emeryville, CA: Dharma Publishing, 1977.

———. *Restoration of Yüan-tse's Chieh-shen-mi-ching-shu Through Its Tibetan Counterpart*. Kyoto: Hierakuji, 1972.

Jaini, Padmanabh S. "On the theory of the two Vasubandhus." *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 21 (1958): 48–53. Summarized in *Proceedings of the International Congress of Orientalists* 24, vol. 1 (Munich, 1957): 552–54.

Kiyota, Minoru, ed. *Mahāyāna Buddhist Meditation*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1978.

Lalou, Marcelle. *Inventaire des Manuscrits Tibétains de Touen-houang conservés à la Bibliothèque Nationale*, 139. I. Paris: 1939.

Lamotte, Étienne. "L'ālayavijñāna (Le Réceptacle) dans le *Mahāyāna-saṃgraha*." *Mélanges Chinoises et Bouddhiques* 3 (1934–35): 169–255.

———. "The Assessment of Textual Interpretation in Buddhism," translated by Sara Boin-Webb. In *Buddhist Hermeneutics*, edited by Donald S. Lopez, 11–27. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1988.

———. *History of Indian Buddhism*, translated by Sara Boin-Webb. Louvain-la-Neuve: Université Catholique de Louvain, 1988.

———. *Saṃdhinirmocana-sūtra*. Louvain and Paris: Université de Louvain & Adrien Maisonneuve, 1935.

———. "Les Trois Caractères et les Trois Absences de Nature-propre dans le *Saṃdhinirmocana-sūtra*, Chapitre 6." *BCLS* (1935): 289–303.

Lancaster, Lewis. "The Oldest Mahāyāna Sūtra." *Eastern Buddhist*, vol. 8 #1 (1975): 30–41.

———. *Prajñāpāramitā and Related Systems*. Berkeley: Berkeley Buddhist Studies Series, 1977.

Mejor, Marek. "A Contribution to the Biography of Vasubandhu from Tibetan Sources." *Tibetan and Buddhist Studies Commemorat-*

ing the 200th Anniversary of the Birth of Alexander Csoma de Körös 2 (1984): 159-74.

Murti, T.R.V. *The Central Philosophy of Buddhism*. London: 1955.

Nagao, Gadjin. "The Buddhist World-View as Elucidated in the Three-Nature Theory and its Similes." *Eastern Buddhist* 16 (1983): 1-18.

———. *Madhyamaka and Yogācāra* (English translation of *Chūkan to Yuishikū*), translated by Leslie S. Kawamura. Albany: State University of New York, 1989.

———. "Vasubandhu" in *Encyclopedia of Religions*, edited by Mircea Eliade, 191ff. New York: Macmillan, 1987.

———. "What Remains in Śūnyatā: A Yogācāra Interpretation of Emptiness." In *Mahāyāna Buddhist Meditation*, edited by Minoru Kiyota, 66-82. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1978.

Nakamura, Hajime. *Indian Buddhism: A Survey with Bibliographical Notes*. Hirakata: Kufs Publications, 1980.

Péri, Noël. "À Propos de la date de Vasubandhu." *Bulletin de l'École Française d'Extrême-Orient* 11 (1911): 339-90.

Powers, John. *The Concept of the Ultimate (don-dam-pa, paramārtha) in the Saṃdhinirmocana Sutra: Analysis, Translation, and Notes*. Doctoral dissertation, University of Virginia. Ann Arbor: University Microfilms, 1991, 92-21104.

———. *Hermeneutics and Tradition in the Sūtra Explaining the Thought*. Leiden: E.J. Brill, 1993 (Indian Thought and Culture Series, #5).

———. "Lost in China, Found in Tibet: How Wonch'uk Became the Author of the *Great Chinese Commentary*." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies*, vol. 15.1 (1992): 95-103.

———. "The Term 'Saṃdhinirmocana' in the Title of the Saṃdhinirmocana-sūtra." *Studies in Central and East Asian Religions*, vol. 4 (1992).

———. "The Tibetan Translations of the Saṃdhinirmocana-sūtra and Bka'-gyur Research." *Central Asiatic Journal*, vol. 37 (3/4) (1993): 198-224.

———. *The Yogācāra School of Buddhism: A Bibliography*. Metuchen, NJ: Scarecrow Press, 1991.

Rahder, Johannes. "Daśabhūmikasūtra." *Le Muséon* 39 (1926): 125-252.

———. *Daśabhūmikasūtra et Bodhisattvabhūmi: Chapitres Vihāra et Bhūmi*. Paris: Paul Geuthner, 1926.

———. "Daśabhūmika-sūtra, Seventh Stage—Sanskrit Text Including Translation of Vasubandhu's Commentary." *Acta Orientalia* 4 (1925): 214-56.

Rahula, Walpola. "Ālayavijñāna." *Mahabodhi* 72 (1964): 130-33.

———. "Asaṅga." *Encyclopedia of Buddhism* 2.1, edited by G. P. Malalasekhana, 133-46. Columbo, Sri Lanka, 1966.

Ruegg, David S. "An Indian Source for the Tibetan Hermeneutical Term *Dgoñs Gzi* 'Intentional Ground'." *Journal of Indian Philosophy* 16 (1988): 1-4.

———. "On the Knowability and Expressibility of Absolute Reality in Buddhism." *Indogaku Bukkyō-gaku Kenkyū* 20.1 (1971): 1-7.

———. "Purport, Implicature, and Presupposition." *Journal of Indian Philosophy* 13 (1985): 309-25.

———. *La Théorie du Tathāgatagarbha et du Gotra*. Paris: Publications de l'École Française d'Extrême-Orient, LXX, 1969.

Schmithausen, Lambert. *Ālayavijñāna*. 2 vols. Tokyo: The International Institute for Buddhist Studies, 1987.

———. "Der Nirvāṇa-Abschnitt in der *Viniśacayasamgrahaṇī* der *Yogācārabhūmiḥ*." Wien: Veröffentlichungen der Kommission für Sprachen und Kulturen Süd- und Ostasiens, Heft 8, 1969.

———. "On the Problem of the Relation of Spiritual Practice and Philosophical Theory in Buddhism." *German Scholars on India*, vol. 2. Bombay: Nachiketa Publications, 1976.

———. "On the Vijñaptimātra Passage in *Samdhinirmocana-sūtra* VIII.7." *Acta Indologica*, vol. VI (1984): 433-55.

Shukla, Karunesha. "Asaṅga in Buddhist Literature." *Journal of the Ganganatha Jha Research Institute* 27.1-2 (1971): 17-22.

Sponberg, Alan. "Dynamic Liberation in Yogācāra Buddhism." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 2.1 (1979): 44-64.

———. "The Trisvabhāva Doctrine in India and China." *Bukkyō Bunka Kenkyū-jo Kiyō* 21 (1982): 97-119.

Steinkellner, Ernst. "Who is Byañ-chub-rdzu-'phrul?" *Berliner Indologische Studien* (1989): 229-51.

Takakusu, Junjiro. "The Date of Vasubandhu." *Indian Studies in Honor of Charles Lanman*, 78-83. Cambridge, MA: 1929.

———. "The Life of Vasu-bandhu by Paramārtha." *T'oung Pao*, ser. II, #5, 269-96; reprint Leyden: E.J. Brill, 1904.

———. *Records of the Buddhist Religion by I-tsing*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1896.

———. "A Study of Paramārtha's Life of Vasubandhu and the Date of Vasubandhu." *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* (1905): 33-53.

Takasaki, Jikidō. "The Date of Vasubandhu the Great Buddhist Philosopher." *Indian Studies in Honor of Charles Lanman*, 79-88. Cambridge, MA: 1929.

Takeuchi, Shōkō. "Phenomena and Reality in Vijñaptimātratā Thought." In *Buddhist Thought and Asian Civilization*, edited by Leslie S. Kawamura and Keith Scott, 254-67. Emeryville, CA: Dharma Publishing, 1977.

Thurman, Robert. "Buddhist Hermeneutics." *Journal of the American Academy of Religion* 46.1 (1978): 19-39.

Tola, Fernando, and Carmen Dragonetti. "The Trisvabhāva-kārikā of Vasubandhu." *Journal of Indian Philosophy* 11 (1983): 225-66.

Tucci, Giuseppe. "Idealistic School of Buddhism." *Dacca University Bulletin* 12 (1926): 1-16.

———. *Pre-Dignāga Buddhist Texts on Logic From Chinese Sources*. Baroda: Gaekwad Oriental Series #49, 1929.

———. *On Some Aspects of the Doctrines of Maitreya-nātha and Asaṅga*. Calcutta: 1930.

Ueda, Yoshifumi. "Two Main Streams of Thought in Yogācāra Philosophy." *Philosophy East and West* 17 (1967): 155-65.

———. "Two Views on Vijñāna—The View that Vijñāna Develops and the View that Vijñāna Knows." *Yūki kyōju shōju kinen bukkyō shisōshi ronshū* (*Essays on the History of Buddhist Thought Presented to Professor Reimon Yūki*), 211–22. Tokyo: Daizō Shuppan, 1964.

Warder, A. K. *Indian Buddhism*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1970.

Wayman, Alex. *Analysis of the Śrāvakabhūmi Manuscript*. Berkeley: University of California Publications in Classical Philology #7, 1961.

———. "Nescience and Insight According to Asaṅga's *Yogācārabhūmi*." In *Buddhist Studies in Honour of Walpola Rahula*, edited by S. Balasooriya, 251–66. London: Gordon Fraser; Sri Lanka: Vimamsa, 1980.

———. "The Rules of Debate According to Asaṅga." *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 78 (Jan.-March, 1958): 29–40.

———. "Yogācāra and the Buddhist Logicians." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 2.1 (1979): 65–78.

Ways of Enlightenment. Berkeley: Dharma Publishing, 1992.

Weinstein, Stanley. "The Ālayavijñāna in Early Yogācāra Buddhism: A Comparison of its Meaning in the *Saṃdhinirmocana-sūtra* and the *Vijñaptimātratāsiddhi* of Dharmapāla." *Kokusai Tōhō Gakusha Kaigikiyō* #3 (1959): 46–58.

———. "The Concept of Ālaya-vijñāna in pre-T'ang Chinese Buddhism." *Yūki kyōju shōju kinen bukkyō shisōshi ronshū* (*Essays on the History of Buddhist Thought Presented to Professor Reimon Yūki*), 38–51. Tokyo: Daizō Shuppan, 1964.

Willis, Janice Dean. *On Knowing Reality*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1979; reprint Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1982. A translation of the *Tattvārtha* chapter of the *Bodhisattvabhūmi*.

Zahler, Leah, ed. *Meditative States in Tibetan Buddhism*. London: Wisdom Publications, 1983.

Glossary

Abhidharma teachings of the Buddha that emphasize training in wisdom

Affliction (kleśa) obscuration based on emotionality and ignorance

Arhat one who attains realization by breaking through the bondage of the emotional obscurations, i.e., kleśas

Ārya a realized one who has attained the path of seeing

Bhagavan a respectful epithet used to refer to the Buddha

Bodhisattva a Mahāyāna practitioner who aspires to become enlightened for the welfare of all sentient beings

Desire realm one of three saṃsāric realms of existence (desire, form, and formless); includes the domains of the desire realm gods, humans, animals, hungry ghosts, and hell beings. In this realm beings are dominated by attachment to the senses.

Dharma the teachings of the Buddha; also signifies truth or reality, or (lower case) 'phenomena' or 'thing'

Dharmadhātu 'Dharma realm'; the suchness of phenomena

Dhyāna meditative concentration

Form realm a saṃsāric realm of existence that includes many of the heavenly spheres and is characterized by temporary bliss and peace

Formless realm a saṃsāric realm of existence whose inhabitants dwell in states of meditation

Hīnayāna the vehicle of realization for those who seek release from saṃsāra for themselves alone, including Śrāvaka and Pratyekabuddha practitioners

Karma voluntary action producing consequences that determine the conditions and circumstances of sentient beings

Mahāyāna the Great Vehicle of realization, which emphasizes the Bodhisattva's great compassion and culminates in the state of a fully enlightened Buddha

Māra the lord of illusion and death, ruler of the desire realm, whom the Buddha defeated before attaining enlightenment

Nirvāṇa the extinction of saṃsāra

Prātimokṣa precepts for ordained and lay people found in the Vinaya teachings

Pratyekabuddha a Dharma practitioner who realizes dependent origination and the selflessness of phenomena, but who is without the great compassion of the Bodhisattva

Samādhi state of concentration and meditative absorption

Saṃsāra cyclic existence: the cycle of frustration and suffering kept in motion by actions based on ignorance

Śrāvaka one who practices the Dharma by focusing on impermanence, the reality of suffering inherent in saṃsāra, and the non-existence of an independent self

Suchness (tathatā) the inexpressible, inconceivable reality of phenomena inseparable from emptiness

Sūtra a discourse of the Buddha

Tathāgata a perfectly realized being; an epithet for the Buddha

Tīrthika a follower of extreme views such as nihilism or eternalism that are not conducive to enlightenment

Tripiṭaka the three collections of the teachings of the Buddha: Sūtra, Abhidharma, and Vinaya.

Vinaya the Buddha's teachings which focus on mindfulness and ethical behavior

Yogācāra one of two main philosophical schools of Mahāyāna Buddhism. The Saṃdhinirmocana Sūtra is one of the principal scriptural sources for the Yogācāra school.

Index

Abhidharma, 338, 366; *see*
Mātrkā, scriptural collections

absorptions, 301, 353, 354; four
formless, 347; meditative, 199,
201, 223, 231, 255, 301, 333, 366

accomplishment of the pur-
pose, 149, 165, 201, 205, 341

accumulations of merit and
wisdom, 107, 109, 115-19, 123,
237-41, 334, 338

afflicted, character, 41-47,
87-91, 193, 338; objects, three
kinds, 177; mind, 211, 346; phe-
nomena, 169, 171, 247, 279, 285,
295, 297, 299, 345, 350, 355, 366;
sentience, 330; thought, 369

affliction, 5, 47, 107-11, 127,
169, 181, 191, 193, 199, 203, 205,
209, 227-31, 235, 239-43, 249,
253, 259, 263-69, 279, 295, 299,
314-18, 322-24, 341, 344, 346-50,
352, 354, 355, 357, 361-63,
365-69; arisen from imputa-
tions, 361; innate, 265, 361;
non-innate, 265, 361; of actions
and birth, 107-11, 177, 199

afflictive afflictions, 107, 109,
111

afflictive obstructions, 113, 115,
201, 229, 314, 315, 336, 337, 355,
356, 363, 369

aggregates, five, 53, 59, 61, 95,
129, 131, 171, 179, 269, 314, 321,
324, 325, 331, 336, 340, 348, 349,
364

analysis of dependence, 285,
367

analysis of logical correctness,
285-91, 367; five pure, 287-91,
368; seven impure, 287, 291-93,
368-69

analysis of performance of
functions, 285, 287, 367

analysis of reality, 285, 295, 369

analytical reasoning, eight
types of, 283-95, 367-69

antidotes, 55, 57, 95, 97, 133,
177, 191, 239, 240, 329, 359; to
the discordances, four, 327

appropriating consciousness,
71-77, 207, 332, 333, 350

appropriation, two types,
69-71, 331, 333

appropriators, internal, 75

argumentation, 25-31, 317; *see*
dispute

Arhat, 323, 324; *see* Śrāvaka

Āryas, 13, 15, 19, 21, 27, 29, 139,
195, 281, 318, 321, 324; level of
the, 367; *see* path of the Āryas

attainment ultimate, 320

attributes, 17, 19, 81, 129-33,
319, 339

awareness of objects, four
kinds, 213

bases of defeat, 283, 366, 367

bases of magical abilities, four,
57-63, 95, 133, 328

bases of training for Bodhi-
sattvas, six, 237-65, 357-60

basis-consciousness, 71-75,
318, 319, 330-33, 347, 351, 366,
369

beings, six kinds, 69, 107, 331

birth, 69, 235, 277, 279, 289, 316,
326, 331, 335, 347, 355, 356,
362-64, 367; *see* afflictions of
actions and birth

Bodhisattva, 5-9, 35, 69, 75, 77,
81, 83, 87, 89, 113, 145, 149-217
passim, 237-65, 271, 314, 316,
317, 322, 335-37, 340, 343-46,
356-62; lineage, 338; prāti-
mokṣa, seven aspects of,

281-83; stages, 83, 165, 199-201,
221-35, 259, 265-69, 275, 314,
322, 337, 352-56, 361-62; *see*
bases of training, perfections

Bodhisattva's five kinds of
capabilities, 257

bonds, two, 39, 41, 195, 211,
350; of errant tendencies, 39,
41, 49, 195, 211, 322-23, 350; of
signs, 39, 41, 49, 195, 211, 350

branches of enlightenment,
seven, 57-63, 97, 133, 328

categories of the Dharma,
four, 279, 364; nine, 279;
twenty-nine, 279-81, 364-66

causal conditions, 73-75

cessation, 29, 53, 55, 95, 111,
129, 173, 203, 209, 301, 317, 320,
325, 326, 346, 348, 349, 356, 363,
365, 366; absence of, 137-41

character of mind, 69-77, 330

character of phenomena,
81-91, 334; three, *see*
imputational character,
other-dependent character,
thoroughly established char-
acter; *see also* compounded,
uncompounded, afflicted char-
acter, purified character

characterless phenomena,
87-91

characters, eleven types, 283

childish, 15-21, 37, 155, 297,
315, 322, 343

clairvoyances, six, 233, 350, 354, 365, 367

clairvoyant knowledge, 316

clouded vision, 83, 335

cognition, 173, 181, 187, 203, 207-9, 343, 347, 368

cognition-only, 155, 157, 173, 191, 313, 319, 335, 336, 342, 343

compassion, 91, 127, 159, 233, 235, 249, 261, 316, 340, 351-53, 356-60; limited, 113

compositional factors, 83, 325, 335

compositional signs, 19

compounded, 11-21, 63, 91, 107-113, 161, 171, 173, 191, 193, 203, 223, 229, 231, 279, 285-89, 314, 317-19, 332, 341, 346, 348, 349, 352, 355, 359, 364, 367, 369; character of the, 35-49, 203, 324, 349; signs of the, 129-35, 193, 203, 348

comprehending objects, ten aspects, 171-77; *see* objects

comprehensions, four types, 317, 354

conceit, 53, 57, 65, 279, 320, 329, 365; three kinds, 324

concentrations, four, 159, 209, 347, 350; first of the, 344

conceptions of the unreal, eight types, 319

conceptual image, 149, 153, 157, 205, 340, 342, 344

conceptual mental activity, 342, 369

conceptuality, 117, 119, 123, 129, 199, 215, 257, 315, 320, 321, 323, 334, 344, 346, 360

conditions, 73, 75, 83, 99, 107, 179, 193, 283-87, 317, 334-37, 352, 353, 358, 360, 367

consciousness, 69-77, 155, 159, 173, 207, 293, 299, 321, 325-27, 330, 331, 333, 334, 341, 342, 347, 348, 350, 361, 363, 367; conceptual mental, 71-73, 207, 350, 351; fivefold collection, 73-75, 351, 369; seven collections, 318; sixfold collection, 71-75, 369

constituents, 55, 59, 61, 95, 131, 241, 242, 277, 325, 341, 364; eighteen, 131, 326, 327; manifold, 55, 95, 327; six, 131, 326, 327; three, 326; various, 55, 95, 327

contaminated, things, 47; consciousnesses, six, 350

contamination, 145, 217, 316, 319, 323, 324, 332, 337, 353, 366, 368

conventional, 179, 324; character, three types of, 283; designations, 17, 19, 71, 81, 85, 105, 107, 111, 169, 285, 318, 367; elaborations, 247; expression, 11, 13; objects, 360

conventional truth, 245, 257, 334, 336, 349, 359, 360

conventions, 15, 27-31, 81, 105, 111, 321, 367, 368

conviction, 107, 109, 115, 117, 121-25, 141, 143, 221, 239, 241, 265, 338

correct abandonings, four, 57-63, 95, 133, 179, 327, 328

crystal, 15, 17, 85, 305, 370

cyclic existence, 9, 69, 107, 235, 255, 321, 331-33, 340, 351, 354, 357, 358, 359, 364; *see* saṃsāra

definitive meaning, establishing the deeds of Tathāgatas, 309; of the stages and perfections, 271; of yoga, 217; Sūtras of, 339; teachings of, 137, 141-45, 338, 339, 368

deluded, 85, 215

demons, 5, 9, 314; *see* Māra

dependent origination, 55, 59, 61, 83, 95, 99, 107, 316, 325, 335, 352, 354, 364

deprecation, 119-25, 251-55, 269, 271, 339, 360, 366

desire realm, 207, 209, 305, 326, 351, 364, 366

Dharmadhātu, 7, 179, 267, 269, 305

Dharmakāya, 165, 201, 225, 275, 277, 301-5, 309, 315, 316, 341, 344, 354, 355, 362-64

discordances, 55, 56, 95, 96, 133, 261, 271, 327, 362

dispute, 29, 31, 117, 139, 141, 215, 291, 339

doctrinal practices, ten, 221, 239, 352, 353

doctrinal teachings, 117, 149, 151, 233, 291, 293; twelve forms of, 151, 343, 364

doctrine, 7, 75, 107-25, 139, 143, 145, 151, 153, 159-67 *passim*, 173, 201, 215, 217, 223, 225, 229, 239, 257, 271, 297, 309, 314, 315, 320, 337, 338, 340, 342, 343, 344, 349, 352-54, 356, 358, 359, 362, 367, 368; comprehending, 185-89; disciplinary, 115, 281, 291, 337, 338, 366; five aspects of comprehending, 169-71, 354; highly integrated, 163, 344; immeasurably integrated, 163, 165, 257, 344; integrated, 161-65, 171, 173, 185, 318, 343; somewhat integrated, 163, 344; unintegrated, 161, 163, 171, 185, 318; *see* wheel of doctrine

doors of liberation, three, 5, 255; *see* emptiness, signlessness, wishlessness

elaborations, 21, 215, 247, 257, 275, 299, 315, 319, 320, 363; eight, 319; four, 363; freedom from, 363; of speech, 319

embodiment, five types, 7; of wisdom, 362; unimaginable, 7, 315, 316; *see* Dharmakāya, Nirmāṇakāya, Saṃbhogakāya

emptiness, 5, 117, 139, 193, 255, 324, 341, 345, 348, 349, 357-59; character of, 193; eighteen, 346; sixteen, 346; ten, 189-91; see *sūnyatā*

enlightenment, 39, 41, 83, 113, 117, 145, 163, 173, 177, 179, 201, 205, 215, 217, 223, 227, 233, 239, 251, 257, 261, 269, 277, 279, 283, 295, 303, 316, 337, 338, 340, 352-55, 357; of Pratyeka-buddha, 173; of Śrāvaka, 173; of Tathāgata, 303; of the three vehicles, 364

equanimity, 159, 167, 169, 328, 350, 357, 358

errant tendencies, 39, 199, 205, 211, 213, 229, 297, 299, 323, 341, 351, 353, 355, 361, 362; abandonment of, 267, 299, 361; associated with contamination, 323, 324; bases of, 165; contaminated, 323; distraction of, 197, 199; four kinds of awareness of, 211-13, 351; eleven discordant classes of, 229-33, 355, 362

everlasting time, 63, 87, 105, 330, 348

exaggeration, 255, 269, 271, 331, 360

exalted vision, 13, 15, 21

exalted wisdom, 7, 13, 15, 21, 243, 303, 305, 323, 336, 344, 357, 359, 362, 364, 366-68; see non-conceptual exalted wisdom

faith, 117, 161, 209, 259, 328, 341, 350, 352, 357, 358

fearless inspiration, 233, 356

fearlessness, granting, 245, 358

fearlessnesses, four, 291, 367, 368

fears, five great, 9, 316-17

feelings, 199, 209, 211, 327, 333, 347, 351; two kinds, 211, 213

forces, five, 57-63, 97, 133, 328

form realm, 71, 207, 213, 305, 326, 366

formless realm, 71, 213, 305, 326, 332, 351, 366

gathering disciples, four means of, 241, 358

Great Vehicle, 9, 137, 139, 149, 269, 271; see *Mahāyāna*

Hīnayāna, 271, 350, 352

Hīnayānists, 307

impermanence, 47, 161, 203, 287, 340, 344, 347, 348, 367, 368

impermanent, 107, 175, 335, 348, 349, 363

impure reasonings, seven characteristics, 291-93, 368, 369

imputational character, 81-91, 99, 105-7, 111, 121, 127-35, 193, 255, 283, 285, 331, 334-39, 346, 347, 350, 360

inexpressible, 11-21, 27, 53,
 127, 317-19
 insight, 151, 185, 227, 340, 355
 interpretable meaning, 139,
 141; scriptures of, 338; Sūtras
 of, 115, 137, 143, 339
 irreversible qualities, 7
 irreversible stages, 9, 317

 Jambudvīpa, 175, 345
 jeweled lotuses, 7, 314

 karma, 253, 287, 293, 305, 318,
 326, 333, 356, 360, 368; karmic
 latencies, 331; karmic obstruc-
 tions, 123, 125
 knowledge, five topics, 254,
 360; seven aspects, 203
 knowledges, three, 9, 316

 lack of own-being, 43, 97-145,
 255, 263, 336, 339; in terms of
 character, 99, 101, 103, 109, 111,
 127, 131, 135, 255, 334, 336, 337;
 in terms of production, 99-101,
 107-11, 127-31, 135, 255, 334,
 336; three types, 115; ultimate,
 99-105, 109, 111, 127-35, 255,
 334, 336
 latencies, 323, 331
 liberation bodies, 275, 305, 363
 liberations, eight, 211, 367
 limbs, eleven, 221-27, 353, 362

limbs of cyclic existence, 331,
 332; of existence, twelve, 131;
 of teaching, twelve, 344
 limited orientation, five types,
 321
 limitless in reach, 5, 313
 limits of phenomena, 149, 205,
 340

 magician, 15, 19, 318, 334
 Mahāyāna, 9, 193, 197, 269, 271,
 309, 316, 318, 338, 340, 346, 350,
 352; *see* Great Vehicle
 Māra, 123, 125, 352; *see*
 demons
 Mātrkā, 277, 283, 297
 mental analysis, three kinds,
 187
 mental appropriation, 203, 347
 mental construction, 9-13, 19
 mental distractions, 366; five
 types, 197-99
 mental factors, 173, 299, 301,
 332, 341, 350, 351, 370
 mental isolation, 341, 344, 352;
 non-isolation, 346
 mental signs, 157, 343
 merit, 141, 143, 181, 247, 303,
 360, 367; *see* accumulations of
 merit and wisdom
 mind, 7, 19, 69-77, 105, 115,
 149-57 *passim*, 169, 173, 181,
 195, 199-211, 217, 223, 227, 233,

237, 241, 243, 247, 251, 253, 299,
301, 313, 314, 316, 323, 325, 327,
330, 331, 332, 333, 337, 340-44,
346, 347, 349-54, 357-59, 362-65,
367, 369, 370; of enlightenment,
145, 239; one-pointed, 157; six-
teen aspects of arising, 207-9;
uninterrupted, 157, 159, 169,
343, 345

mindful establishments, four,
55-63, 95, 133, 179, 295, 327,
364; antidotes, 55, 95, 327; dis-
cordances, 95, 327; meditative
cultivation, 55, 95, 327

mindfulness, 5, 167, 327, 328,
337, 340, 347

mistaken apprehension, two
types, 369

modes, six aspects, 285

[negative] behaviors, two, 7,
314, 315

Nirmāṇakāya, 277, 303, 315,
364, 369

nirvāṇa, 29, 39, 41, 111, 127,
161, 163, 201, 223, 231, 237, 281,
289, 320, 341, 344, 346, 348, 349,
351, 352, 354, 355, 357, 369; nat-
urally in a state of, 97, 99, 103,
105, 115, 119, 123, 125, 135-41;
non-abiding, 315; Śrāvaka, 337;
with a remainder of aggre-
gates, 213, 351; without a
remainder of aggregates, 211,
213, 321, 351, 366

non-conceptual, 63, 257, 359;
see samādhi

non-conceptual exalted wis-
dom, 313, 321, 350-52, 359; of
equality, 336

non-conceptual images, 149,
205, 340-42, 344

non-conceptuality, 245, 247,
259, 315

non-dual, 7, 11, 21, 303, 317,
349; Dharmakāya, 316; under-
standing, 61

non-existence, 336, 363; view
of, 119

object of activity, 73, 319, 330,
340-42, 356

object of observation for
purification, 59, 61, 101, 129,
133, 135, 320, 329, 334-36, 341

objective ultimate, 320

objects, comprehending,
169-85; five aspects, 177-81;
four aspects, 181; six external,
175, 269, 320, 351; that are
meanings, three aspects of,
181, 183; ten aspects, 181

objects of conceptual activity,
129-35

objects of knowledge, 227, 283,
315, 336, 340, 343, 354, 355

objects of observation, 199,
201, 205, 207, 241, 243, 255,
277-86, 290-95, 320, 334, 336,
340-43, 347, 356, 365, 368; of
consciousness, 155; of
śamatha, 149, 153, 157, 205, 341,

346; of vipaśyanā, 149, 153, 157, 205, 346; three types, 205

obscurations, 7, 19, 47, 109, 315, 323, 347, 355, 356, 360; three, 353; twenty-two, 229-33, 362; with respect to imputations, 322; with respect to reasoning, 322

obstacles, 203, 233, 261, 341, 356; five kinds, 195-97

obstructions, 107, 115, 117, 123, 203, 314, 320, 338, 363; five, 197; of body, 323; of mind, 323; of speech, 323; of vipaśyanā, 149, 153, 157; to entering the Tathāgata stage, 354; to omniscience, 115, 201, 229, 267, 314, 315, 336, 355, 356, 363, 369; two, 336, 351, 369; *see* afflictive obstructions

omniscience, 317, 322, 333, 368

omniscient persons, 289; five aspects, 291

one taste, 57-65, 137, 317, 329, 343, 344

other-dependent character, 81-89, 99-101, 105-11, 121, 129-35, 193, 255, 317, 334, 335, 339, 346, 349, 350

other-dependent phenomena, 342, 360

own-being, 81, 129, 133, 191, 255, 263, 269, 283, 293, 295, 297, 319, 330, 334, 339, 340; of the imputational, 105, 107, 111, 255, 285, 317; of the other-dependent, 105, 107, 111, 255,

317; of the thoroughly established, 105, 255, 317; ultimate, 111; *see* lack of own-being

own-character, 95, 97, 338

parinirvāṇa, 303

path, 55, 95, 111, 113, 119, 127, 153, 169, 173, 197, 203, 305, 307, 320, 325, 326, 337, 340, 341, 346, 348, 354-56, 362, 363, 365, 368, 369; of accumulation, 322, 328; of preparation, 322, 328; of meditation, 205, 323, 329, 332, 361, 365, 366; of no more learning, 337, 366; of seeing, 205, 318, 328, 332, 361, 365, 366; Śrāvaka, 337; of yoga, 215; *see* supramundane paths

path of the Āryas, 315, 353, 365; eight branches, 57-63, 97, 133, 291, 328, 329, 337

peace, 5, 113, 161, 289, 316, 341

peaceful, 245, 362; way of acting, 9; state, 235

peacefulness, 113, 337

perfections, six, 7, 231, 237-65, 271, 275, 353, 357-60, 362; six results from maturing, 247; six things contrary to, 247

permanent time, 63, 87, 105, 330, 348

physical isolation, 341, 352; non-isolation, 346

physical sense powers, five, 69, 331, 332, 347, 351; six, 320

pliancy, 151, 153, 328, 341

powers, Bodhisattva's great, 207-11, 350, 367; five, 57-63, 97, 133, 328, 367; of the perfections, four, 261; ten, 291, 359, 362, 367

practice ultimate, 320

prātimokṣa, 281-83

Pratyekabuddha, 9, 113, 199, 269, 275, 316, 324, 346; enlightenment, 173; liberation body, 275, 305; lineage, 111, 326; vehicle, 137

predispositions, 71, 85, 107, 111, 241, 331-33, 347, 350, 351, 355, 367; of afflictions, 324; toward afflictions, three kinds, 265, 267

production, 95, 97, 129, 133, 139, 141, 179, 189, 265, 307

pure reasonings, 368

purification, 165, 173, 181, 203, 259, 279, 323, 326, 327, 336, 339, 341, 345, 347, 348, 355, 356, 359, 360; single, 113

purified, character, 45, 89, 91, 169, 193, 338; objects, 171, 177; phenomena, 169, 171, 279, 285, 297, 299, 350, 355

purities, eight, 233-35; four, 221, 352, 362

purities of the perfections, five, 251; seven, 251-57, 355, 359, 360

purities, seven, of concentration, 255, 360; of effort, 253-55;

of ethics, 253; of generosity, 252, 253, 359, 360; of patience, 253, 360; of wisdom, 255, 257

reality, 13, 15, 19, 21, 75, 77, 105, 117, 155, 181, 187, 205, 221, 259, 261, 299, 342, 353, 360, 362; sphere, 63, 295, 330; ultimate, 31

reality limit, 179, 345

realms, 181-87, 314; five, 183, 303; of existence, three, 177, 332, 350, 370; of sentient beings, 53, 105, 113, 127, 175, 183, 269, 303, 345; pure, 307, 370; worldly, 5, 7, 175, 183, 277, 303, 307, 313, 345, 348; see desire realm, form realm, formless realm

reasoning, four aspects, 285-95, 367-69

relative aspects of existence, 340

resources, 171, 177, 189, 195, 213, 243, 247, 261, 279, 340, 346, 360; fourteen types, 345

retention, 223, 227, 231, 233, 353

samādhi, 133, 151-57, 185, 191, 193, 199, 207, 223, 227, 245, 255, 271, 328, 329, 337, 340-42, 346-48, 353, 358-60, 367, 369; analytical, 167, 328, 344, 364-67, 369; conceptual, 167, 344; non-analytical, 167; non-conceptual, 167, 344; vajra-like, 355, 366; worldly, 223, 353

śamatha, 49, 149–205, 318, 340–44, 346; cause of, 167, 169, 344, 345; eight kinds, 159; that does not dwell on doctrines, 159, 161; that dwells on doctrines, 159–67; three kinds, 159, 343; *see* objects of observation

Sambhogakāya, 315, 369

sameness, 7, 35, 49, 315

saṃsāra, 21, 201, 223, 231, 354, 355; *see* cyclic existence

scriptural collections, three, 338; *see* Vinaya, Sūtra, Abhidharma, three baskets

seeds, 71, 77, 318, 330–33, 351, 355, 356, 367, 369

self, 43, 77, 177, 279, 319, 331–33, 347, 359, 365, 369

selflessness, 327, 368; of compounded things, 45; of persons, 171, 191, 203, 346, 349; of phenomena, 47, 61, 63, 101–5, 129, 133, 135, 161, 173, 191, 203, 287, 329, 341, 346, 349;

sense spheres, 55, 59, 61, 95, 131, 325, 341, 364; external, 171, 175, 179, 269, 346; five physical, 173; internal, 171, 179, 269, 346; *see* physical sense powers

signless, 27, 63, 354, 356

signlessness, 5, 7, 27, 63, 201, 209, 223, 225, 229, 231, 232, 255, 341, 352, 354, 359

signs, 19, 27, 29, 53–57, 63, 71, 87, 157, 165, 167, 185–211, 225,

229–33, 255, 293, 317, 325, 342, 343, 346–50, 354–56, 360, 365; clear and coarse, 167, 344; distraction of, 197, 199; of doctrine, 159, 167, 185, 187, 343; of objects, 185, 187; subtle, 201–5, 231, 355; ten kinds, 187–93; *see* bonds of signs, compounded signs, mental signs

skillful means, 211, 241, 257, 277, 357–59, 364; not skillful, 247, 249; six kinds, 356

skillful with respect to six topics, 207–11, 350

sky-flower, 101, 336

sobering phenomena, 169, 344

spheres of surpassing, eight, 211

spheres of totality, ten, 211, 313

spiritual guides, 239, 357

Śrāvaka, 7, 9, 145, 179, 195, 199, 217, 269, 315, 316, 324, 333, 337, 344, 346, 356; enlightenment, 173; liberation body, 275, 305; lineage, 111–15, 326, 337; prātimokṣa, 281; samādhis, 193; vehicle, 137, 139, 269, 337

stage of engagement through conviction, 35, 221, 265, 322

substances, seven precious, 5, 313

suchness, 61, 63, 83, 129, 133, 135, 157, 163, 171, 173, 179, 183–91, 201–5, 209, 281–85, 319–22, 329, 335, 336, 341, 343,

347-50, 360, 362, 363, 366, 368,
369; seven aspects of, 171-73,
201-5, 257, 283

suffering, 47, 55, 95, 131, 133,
161, 173, 177, 179, 203, 209, 237,
245, 249, 261, 269, 279, 285, 289,
307, 315, 321, 325, 326, 341, 344,
345, 347-49, 354, 355, 357-60,
363, 365, 367, 368; free from,
127; great assemblage of, 83,
335; great fear of, 113. *See*
truths, four noble

sūnyatā, 318; *see* emptiness

superimposing, 105

supramundane, 179, 195, 209,
295, 364; paths, 340, 363, 369;
wisdom, 19

surpassing, ethics, 221, 237;
intention, 221; mind, 237;
thought, 233, 235, 241, 242, 317,
352; wisdom, 237, 352

sustenances, four, 55, 59, 61,
95, 131, 326

Sūtra, 117, 119, 123, 125, 151,
161, 163, 277, 279, 297; *see*
definitive meaning, inter-
pretable meaning

Tathāgata, 5, 7, 9, 25, 63, 69, 75,
77, 81, 89, 99, 109, 115, 117, 137,
165, 179, 193, 195, 207, 213,
275-309, 315, 324, 337, 344, 351,
362, 363, 369, 370; lineage, 111,
205, 327; stage, 199, 201, 352,

354, 355, 361; thought of, 139;
threefold teachings of, 277

thoroughly established charac-
ter, 81-89, 101, 105, 107, 121,
129-35, 193, 255, 317, 318,
334-36, 339, 350, 360

thought, 69, 75, 77, 173, 177,
297, 299, 307, 315, 318, 327, 331,
333, 336, 340, 343, 369; pure,
115, 125, 221, 352, 353; the
Buddha's, 115-19, 123, 127, 139,
143, 217, 269, 271, 285, 305, 315,
337-39, 346, 369; *see* surpassing
thought

three baskets, 366

Tīrthika, 25, 59, 307, 320; five
faults, 320

topics of knowledge, five, 257,
360

transformation of the basis,
163, 341, 344, 351, 363; three
types of, 362; well-established,
275, 362

true personhood, 29, 189, 320,
321, 355

truth, 19, 37-41, 285, 362, 365

truths, four noble, 55, 59, 61,
95, 131, 133, 139, 173, 203, 223,
326, 341, 348, 352, 355, 365

truths, two, 334; *see* conven-
tional, ultimate truth

ultimate, 11-21, 77, 101, 111,
145, 179, 191, 320-22, 329, 330,
333, 336, 345, 348, 360; aspects

of existence, 340, 341; character, 25-31, 35-49, 57-65, 283, 317, 329, 330, 334; five characteristics, 317; three aspects of truth, 359; truth, 245, 257, 324, 334, 336, 338, 349, 359; *see* lack of own-being

unceasing, 97, 99, 103, 105, 115, 119, 123, 125, 135, 316, 337

uncompounded, 11-21, 105, 191, 299, 314, 317-20, 330, 346, 348, 349, 365; signs, 191, 203; sphere, 344

uncontaminated, consciousness, 350; realm, 127; virtues, 322

unproduced, 97, 99, 103, 105, 115, 119, 123, 125, 135, 316, 337, 366

unshared quality of Buddhas, 324

unsurpassibilities, six, 340

vehicles, different, 271, 269; one, 127, 269; single, 113; two [lesser], 370; *see* Great Vehicle, Śrāvaka, Pratyekabuddha

views that overvalue the body, 195, 346; that overvalue resources, 195, 346

Vinaya, 277, 281, 283, 297, 338, 366

vipaśyanā, 49, 149-205, 257, 318, 340, 342, 346; three kinds, 157-59, 343; that does not

dwell on doctrines, 159, 161; that dwells on doctrines, 159-67; *see* objects of observation

virtue, 109, 209, 241, 245, 251, 322, 329, 332, 344, 358; root of supreme, 5, 313; roots of, 107, 109, 115, 117, 123, 235, 269, 314, 320, 356, 367, 370

virtuous, course, 239, 241, 357; mental factors, 341, 350; qualities, 121, 123, 195, 263, 264, 314, 357

vision, 201, 318; *see* exalted vision, clouded vision

wheel of doctrine, 303; surpassable, 139, 141; unsurpassable, 141

wisdom, 17, 115, 121, 159, 165, 173, 183, 185, 195, 318, 323, 327, 328, 330, 338, 339, 341, 343-46, 351, 353-55, 358, 359, 362, 364, 365, 369; of Āryas, 13, 15, 19, 21; of Bodhisattvas, 7, 221, 227, 233, 237-45, 255, 257, 263; of Śrāvakas, 7, 9, 316; of Tathāgatas, 7, 117, 301-5; *see* accumulations of merit and wisdom, exalted wisdom

wishlessness, 5, 255, 341, 359

yoga, 61, 213, 215, 340; definitive meaning of, 217

Yogācāra, 330, 342

yogis, 43, 45, 313, 342